

This manual links to Knowledgebase Answer ID <u>1092901</u> for fault codes and parameters; download the spreadsheets now to ensure offline access.



# iTRAK 5730 System

Bulletin Number 2198T



by **ROCKWELL AUTOMATION** 

**User Manual** 

**Original Instructions** 

# **Important User Information**

Read this document and the documents listed in the additional resources section about installation, configuration, and operation of this equipment before you install, configure, operate, or maintain this product. Users are required to familiarize themselves with installation and wiring instructions in addition to requirements of all applicable codes, laws, and standards.

Activities including installation, adjustments, putting into service, use, assembly, disassembly, and maintenance are required to be carried out by suitably trained personnel in accordance with applicable code of practice.

If this equipment is used in a manner not specified by the manufacturer, the protection provided by the equipment may be impaired.

In no event will Rockwell Automation, Inc. be responsible or liable for indirect or consequential damages resulting from the use or application of this equipment.

The examples and diagrams in this manual are included solely for illustrative purposes. Because of the many variables and requirements associated with any particular installation, Rockwell Automation, Inc. cannot assume responsibility or liability for actual use based on the examples and diagrams.

No patent liability is assumed by Rockwell Automation, Inc. with respect to use of information, circuits, equipment, or software described in this manual.

Reproduction of the contents of this manual, in whole or in part, without written permission of Rockwell Automation, Inc., is prohibited.

Throughout this manual, when necessary, we use notes to make you aware of safety considerations.



**WARNING:** Identifies information about practices or circumstances that can cause an explosion in a hazardous environment, which may lead to personal injury or death, property damage, or economic loss.



ATTENTION: Identifies information about practices or circumstances that can lead to personal injury or death, property damage, or economic loss. Attentions help you identify a hazard, avoid a hazard, and recognize the consequence.

**IMPORTANT** Identifies information that is critical for successful application and understanding of the product.

Labels may also be on or inside the equipment to provide specific precautions.



**SHOCK HAZARD:** Labels may be on or inside the equipment, for example, a drive or motor, to alert people that dangerous voltage may be present.



**BURN HAZARD:** Labels may be on or inside the equipment, for example, a drive or motor, to alert people that surfaces may reach dangerous temperatures.



**ARC FLASH HAZARD:** Labels may be on or inside the equipment, for example, a motor control center, to alert people to potential Arc Flash. Arc Flash will cause severe injury or death. Wear proper Personal Protective Equipment (PPE). Follow ALL Regulatory requirements for safe work practices and for Personal Protective Equipment (PPE).

The following icon may appear in the text of this document.



Identifies information that is useful and can help to make a process easier to do or easier to understand.

# Preface

| Summary of Changes | 9 |
|--------------------|---|
| Conventions        |   |
| Appropriate Use    | 9 |

# Before You Begin Installation

| Chapter 1   |
|---|
| About the iTRAK 5730 System 11                                |
| Catalog Number Explanations 16                                |
| Assembled iTRAK 5730 System 16                                |
| Modular iTRAK 5730 System Components 17                       |
| Motor Modules 20  |
| Motor Module Status Indicators 21                             |
| Connector Modules 22  |
| Connector Module Status Indicators                            |
| Mounting Rings 24   |
| Rectangular and Flat Rails 25                                 |
| Mover   |
| Power Supplies  |
| Programmable Controllers                                      |
| Typical Communication Configurations 29                       |
| Linear Topology 29  |
| Device Level Ring Topology 30                                 |
| Star Topology 31  |
| Safety Information 32   |
| Risk Assessment 32  |
| General Assembly Instructions 33                              |
| Machine Guarding 34   |
| Avoid Accidents, Injury, and Property Damage                  |
| Remove Power from the iTRAK 5730 System                       |
| Avoid Electrical Shock 35                                     |
| Protection Against Contact with Hot Parts                     |
| Protection Against Magnetic and Electromagnetic Fields During |
| Installation and Use  |
| Safe Magnet Handling 38                                       |
| Motor Magnet Protective Cover 38                              |
| Chapter 2   |

# iTRAK 5730 System Installation

| n | Safety Information 39            |
|---|----------------------------------|
|   | Before You Begin 40              |
|   | Tools and Accessories 40         |
|   | Hardware Specification Table 40  |
|   | Installation Workspace 40        |
|   | General Handling Instructions 41 |
|   | Storage                          |
|   | iTRAK System Components 41       |
|   | Inspection                       |
|   | •                                |

|                         | ons                                    |    |
|-------------------------|--|----|
| Assemble an iTRAK 573   | 30 System                              | 43 |
| Before You Begin .      |  | 44 |
| Install Top Structu     | ral Mounting Rings                     | 45 |
| Install Bottom Stru     | ctural Mounting Rings 4                | 48 |
|                         | Rails and Flat Wedges 4                |    |
|                         | angular Rails                          |    |
|                         | Wedges and Align Rectangular Rails     |    |
|                         | Vedges, and Connector Modules          |    |
| Mount the iTRAK 5730    | Assembly                               | 58 |
|                         | ements                                 |    |
| Before You Lift and     | Mount the iTRAK 5730 Assembly          | 61 |
| Lift the iTRAK 5730     | Assembly                               | 52 |
| Install the Lubrication | System                                 | 63 |
|                         | AK Lubrication System                  |    |
|                         | nstall Lubricant Pumps e               |    |
| Mount the Lubrica       | nt Pumps and Connect Lubricant Tubes 6 | 54 |
| Make Lubricant Tu       | be Connections to the iTRAK            | 56 |
| Fill the Lubricant P    | ump Reservoirs with Lubricant          | 67 |
| Wire the Lubricant      | Pumps                                  | 67 |
| Configure the Lubr      | ication System                         | 67 |
| Optional Infield Cover  | s (                                    | 67 |
|                         |  |    |

# Chapter 3

| Connect the iTRAK 5730 System | Typical iTRAK 5730 System<br>Provide Power to the iTRAK System | . 71 |
|-------------------------------|--|------|
|                               | Connect Power to the iTRAK 5730 System                         | . 72 |
|                               | One iTRAK Power Supply   | . 72 |
|                               | Multiple iTRAK Power Supplies                                  | . 73 |
|                               | Connect the Power Cable  | • 74 |
|                               | Connect an EtherNet/IP Network to the iTRAK 5730 System        | . 75 |
|                               | EtherNet/IP Address Rotary Switches                            | . 75 |
|                               | Communication Control DIP Switch                               | • 77 |
|                               | Connect the Ethernet Cable                                     | . 78 |

# **Chapter 4**

| •  |
|--|
| Studio 5000 Logix Designer 81                  |
| Configure the iTRAK 5730 System 82             |
| Set the IP Address                             |
| Protected Mode 83                              |
| Configure and Customize the Project File       |
| Configure the Controller 84                    |
| Configure the Kinetix 5700 Power Supply 86     |
| Configure the iTRAK 5730 Power Supply 90       |
| Configure the iTRAK 5730 Motor Modules         |
| Continue iTRAK 5730 Motor Module Configuration |
| Configure the Motion Group 105                 |
| Configure the Section Axis Properties 107      |
| Configure the Mover Axis Properties 109        |
|  |

Configure and Start Up the iTRAK 5730 System

# Chapter 5

# Chapter 6

| Before You Begin 137                                       |
|--|
| Preventive Maintenance 137                                 |
| Install or Replace Components 138                          |
| Replacement Hardware 138                                   |
| Install or Remove a Position Magnet Assembly 139           |
| Install or Replace a Mover 140                             |
| Replace a Straight Motor Module 146                        |
| Replace a Curved Motor Module 151                          |
| Replace Top and Bottom Rectangular Straight Rails 154      |
| Replace Top and Bottom Rectangular Curved Rails 155        |
| Replace Top and Bottom Flat Straight Rails 157             |
| Replace Top and Bottom Flat Curved Rails 159               |
| Replace Top and Bottom Rectangular Wedges 161              |
| Replace Top and Bottom Flat Wedges 162                     |
| Replace a Connector Module 164                             |
| Replace an Infield Cover 165                               |
| Replace a Lubricant Cartridge 166                          |
| Lubrication 166  |
| Lubrication Using an iTRAK Lubrication System 166          |
| Lubrication Using a Customer Provided Oil Bleed System 172 |
|  |

# Troubleshoot the iTRAK 5730 System

# **Maintenance**

# iTRAK 5730 System Integrated Safety

# Chapter 7

| Certification 173   |
|---|
| Important Safety Considerations                             |
| Safety Application Requirements                             |
| Category 3 Requirements According to ISO 13849-1 174        |
| Stop Category Definition                                    |
| Performance Level (PL) and Safety Integrity Level (SIL) 175 |
| Probability of Dangerous Failure Per Hour 175               |
| Out-of-Box State  |
| Out-of-Box State Support                                    |
| Safe Torque Off Function                                    |
| Safe Torque Off (STO) Function Operation                    |
|   |
| Safe Torque Off (STO) State Reset                           |
| Safe Torque Off (STO) Specifications                        |
| Safe Torque Off (STO) Assembly Tags                         |
| Safe Torque Off (STO) Mode                                  |
| Understand Safe Torque Off (STO) Behavior in an iTRAK 5730  |
| System. 182   |
| iTRAK 5730 System Safety Considerations                     |
| Functional Safety Considerations 182                        |
| Timed SS1 Stopping Function                                 |
| Safety Function Operation 183                               |
| Timed SS1 Request Removed 186                               |
| Motion Direct Commands in Motion Control Systems 187        |
| Understand STO Bypass When Using Motion Direct              |
| Commands 187  |
| Studio 5000 Application Warning Messages 188                |
| Torque Permitted in a Multi-workstation Environment 190     |
| Warning Icon and Text in Axis Properties 191                |
| Explicit Messages 192                                       |
| Safe Monitor Network Communication 193                      |
| Troubleshoot the Safe Stop Function 198                     |
| Understand Integrated Safety Motor Module Replacement 198   |
| Replace an Integrated Safety Motor Module in a GuardLogix   |
| System 199  |
| Configure Only When No Safety Signature Exists 199          |
| Configure Always 200  |
|   |

Update the iTRAK 5730 System Firmware

| Appendix A |
|------------|
|------------|

| ••   |
|--|
| Before You Begin 201                                   |
| Inhibit the Module                                     |
| Update Your Firmware 203                               |
| Use ControlFLASH Plus to Update Your iTRAK 5730 System |
| Firmware   |
| Use ControlFLASH to Update Your iTRAK 5730 System      |
| Firmware   |
| Configure Your Communication Path with RSLinx 208      |
| Start the ControlFLASH Software                        |
| Verify the Firmware Update 213                         |
|  |

| <b>High-speed</b> | Data | Logging |
|-------------------|------|---------|
| Service           |      |         |

History of Changes

# Appendix B

| Configure and Use the Message Instruction | 215 |
|---|-----|
| iTRAK System Data Logging Parameters      | 223 |

# Appendix C

| 2198T-UM003C-EN-P   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| Index<br>Additional Resources<br>iTRAK 5730 and Kinetix System Resources<br>Programmable Controllers Resources<br>EtherNet/IP Resources | 233<br>233<br>233 |

# **Notes:**

|                                | This manual provides information and instructions for how to assemble, lift,<br>mount, connect, configure, troubleshoot, and maintain an iTRAK <sup>®</sup> 5730<br>system. This manual is intended for engineers or technicians that implement<br>the design, installation, and wiring of the iTRAK 5730 system. This manual is<br>also intended for programmers that configure, operate, and maintain the<br>iTRAK 5730 system with a programmable logic controller and EtherNet/IP <sup>™</sup><br>network.<br>To learn more about the iTRAK 5730 system, contact your Rockwell<br>Automation sales representative for information on available training courses. |  |  |  |  |
|--------------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
|                                |  |  |  |  |  |
| Summary of Changes             | This publication contains the following new or updated information includes substantive updates only and is not intended to reflect all  | on. This list<br>changes.              |  |  |  |
|                                | Торіс  | Page                                   |  |  |  |
|                                | Added UKCA certification information to the Safety Information section.  | 32                                     |  |  |  |
| Conventions<br>Appropriate Use | These conventions are used throughout this manual: Bulleted lists provide<br>information, not procedural steps. Numbered lists provide steps or<br>hierarchical information.<br>Read and understand the safety instructions before using the iTRAK 5730<br>system.   |  |  |  |  |
|                                |  |  |  |  |  |
|                                | ATTENTION: Incorrect installation, operation, and maintenance of this cause personal injury or property damage. You are responsible for the safety of your completed machinery. An incorrectly applied or installed system can result in component damage or a reduction in product life.  | product can<br>product<br>J iTRAK 5730 |  |  |  |
|                                | Critical guidelines for appropriate use include:   |  |  |  |  |
|                                |  |  |  |  |  |
|                                | <ul> <li>Hardware must remain in its original state; never make str changes.</li> </ul>  | ructural                               |  |  |  |
|                                | <ul> <li>Do not de-compile software or alter source codes.</li> </ul>  |  |  |  |  |
|                                | <ul> <li>Do not use damaged or faulty components.</li> </ul>   |  |  |  |  |
|                                | <ul> <li>Install the system in the manner that is described in this m</li> </ul>   | anual                                  |  |  |  |
|                                | <ul> <li>Operate the system in the ambient conditions that are desc<br/>iTRAK 5730 System Technical Data, publication <u>2198T-TDO</u></li> </ul>  | cribed in                              |  |  |  |
|                                |  |  |  |  |  |

# Notes:

# **Before You Begin Installation**

Use this chapter to become familiar with the design, installation, and safety requirements for an iTRAK<sup>®</sup> 5730 system.

| Торіс                                | Page |
|--------------------------------------|------|
| About the iTRAK 5730 System          | 11   |
| Catalog Number Explanations          | 16   |
| Motor Modules                        | 20   |
| Connector Modules                    | 22   |
| Mounting Rings                       | 24   |
| Rectangular and Flat Rails           | 25   |
| Mover                                | 27   |
| Power Supplies                       | 28   |
| Programmable Controllers             | 28   |
| Typical Communication Configurations | 29   |
| Safety Information                   | 32   |

# About the iTRAK 5730 System

The iTRAK 5730 system is a modular, scalable, linear motor system. This system provides independent control of multiple movers on straight or curvilinear paths.

#### Table 1 - iTRAK 5730 System Features

| Features                                  | Specifications   |
|---|--|
| Mover pitch                               | True 50 mm (1.97 in.)  |
| Footprint                                 | Track width: 420 mm (16.54 in.)<br>Track length: 10349434 mm (40.71371.42 in.)<br>Additional dimensions are provided in <u>Approximate Dimensions on page 43</u> .   |
| Orientation                               | Horizontal, vertical, or stand-up. Orientations are shown in Figure 1 on page 13.  |
| Peak force                                | 100 N (22.48 lbf)  |
| Continuous force                          | 36 N (8.09 lbf)  |
| Maximum speed                             | 5 m/s (16.4 ft/s)  |
| Maximum payload weight for a single mover | 4 kg (8.8 lb). When a mover is carrying a payload that is high within the 04 kg (08.8 lb) range, the mover must move at a low speed. The greater the weight of the payload, the lower the speed the mover can travel at. |
| Position loop update                      | 250 μs   |
| Repeatability                             | ± 0.01 mm (0.0004 in.)   |
| Maximum system size                       | 64 logical sections, 128 movers, 8700 mm (342.52 in.) of straight rail length, 9434 mm<br>(371.42 in.) of total length   |
| Rail material                             | Stainless steel  |
| IP rating                                 | IP65 without infield cover, IP66 with infield cover  |
| Safety                                    | Integrated Safe Torque Off, SS1  |

The iTRAK 5730 system is built from a combination of the following modules and components:

- Straight motor modules
- Curved motor modules
- Connector modules
- Mounting rings
- Rectangular and flat rails
- Movers with mover and position magnets

A complete iTRAK 5730 system uses these components:

- Programmable logic controller (PLC)
- Input power components (branch circuit protection, disconnect, line filter, and functional safety)
- 24V SELV or PELV rated control power supply
- Kinetix<sup>®</sup> 5700 DC-bus power supply
- Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply
- Power cable (DC-bus and 24V control)
- Ethernet cable
- Lubrication system
- Infield covers (optional)

You can combine straight and curved motor modules to build multiple machine shapes and manage a wide variety of dynamic processes. Motor modules, movers, and connectors are modular and designed to accommodate system growth and varied power demands. The system can be expanded to more than 19 meters (62.3 feet).

The motor modules are integrated drive and motor coil units with feedback capability. Each motor module can operate and control multiple movers. Motor over-temperature protection is provided by temperature sensors that are embedded in the motor coils of the motor modules. The iTRAK 5730 system does not provide electronic motor over-temperature protection.

Power and network communication connections to the motor modules are provided by the connector modules. The power and control input connector module provides the power connection between the iTRAK power supply and a motor module and a communication connection from an EtherNet/IP<sup>™</sup> network and a motor module. Additional connector modules provide additional power input and communication pass-through connections.

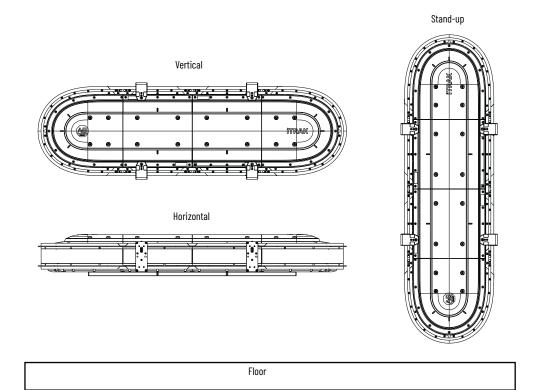
Movers provide the platform for your application effectors. Movers can be synchronized or independently controlled and positioned accurately on any point of the track.

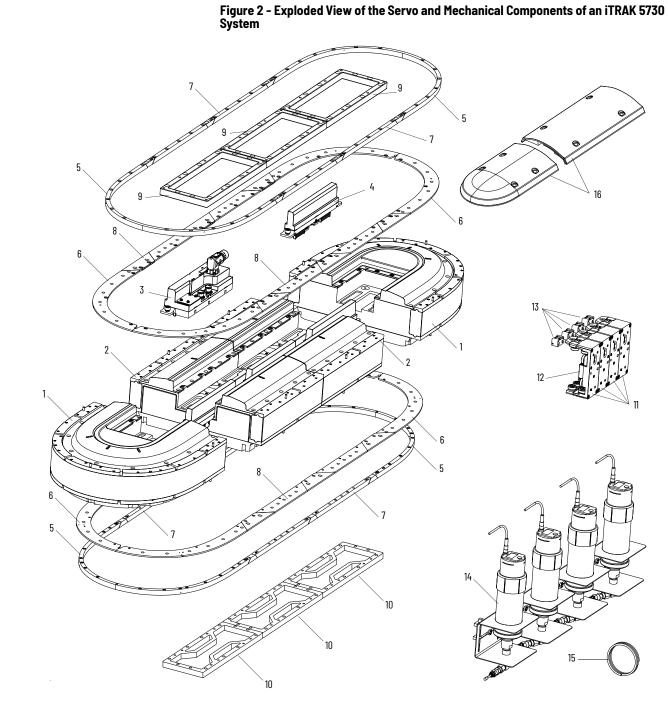
The lubrication system intermittently applies lubricant to the rail system. The lubricant is distributed around the track by the mover track rollers. The lubrication system helps to prevent wear on the track and mover components and provides a smoother, quieter system.

The infield covers fit over the connector modules and connection wires and provide IP66 protection against water, dirt, and debris.

A customer-sourced mounting system is required to mount the iTRAK 5730. The are three recommended mounting orientations for the iTRAK 5730 system: horizontal, vertical, and stand-up.

#### Figure 1 - Mounting Orientations





| ltem | Component  |
|------|--|
| 1    | Curved motor module  |
| 2    | Straight motor module  |
| 3    | Power and control input connector module                     |
| -    | Power with pass-through control connector module (not shown) |
| 4    | Power and control pass-through connector module              |
| 5    | Top and bottom curved rectangular rail w/wedges              |
| 6    | Top and bottom curved flat rail w/wedges                     |
| 7    | Top and bottom straight rectangular rail w/wedges            |
| 8    | Top and bottom straight flat rail w/wedges                   |

| ltem | Component                           |
|------|-------------------------------------|
| 9    | Mounting ring (top)                 |
| 10   | Mounting ring (bottom)              |
| 11   | Mover                               |
| 12   | Mover magnet                        |
| 13   | Position magnets                    |
| 14   | Lubrication system pump (x4)        |
| 15   | Lubrication system tube             |
| 16   | Infield cover (straight and curved) |

| iTRAK 5730 Component   | Cat. No.   | Description   |  |  |
|--|--|---|--|--|
| Motor module   | 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2 (straight)<br>2198T-L20-T0309-D18-S2 (curved) | The motor module is an integrated drive and motor coil unit (referred to as a section in the firmware) with feedback capability.  |  |  |
| Mounting ring  | 2198T-AS-01 (top)<br>2198T-AS-02 (bottom)                            | The mounting rings connect the motor modules and are used to mount and provide rigidity to the iTRAK 5730 system.   |  |  |
| 2198T-BE-ST03, straight,<br>300 mm (11.8 in.)<br>2198T-BE-ST06, straight,<br>600 mm (23.6 in.)<br>2198T-BE-ST09, straight,<br>900 mm (35.4 in.)<br>2198T-BE-ED18, 180° curve,<br>900 mm (35.4 in.) nom |  | The flat and rectangular rails attach to the motor frame. This system of rails provides high-precision guidance for the mover track rollers.  |  |  |
| Mover  | 2198T-VT0304-E   | The movers are passive magnetic components. They move along the track in response to the magnetic fields generated by the motor modules. You attach your application end effector to the mover. |  |  |
| Mover magnet   | 2198T-M0304-A000-SS  | Mover magnet plates can be used to build your own movers to optimize weight or bearing solutions. The mover magnet is included with the mover.  |  |  |
| Position magnet  | 2198T-N1-0304, 2198T-NN-0304   | Position magnets are used to actuate sensors in the track. These magnets are sold separately from the mover.  |  |  |

#### Table 2 - Electromechanical Components of an iTRAK 5730 System

#### Table 3 - Power and Control Components of an iTRAK 5730 System

| iTRAK 5730 Component   | Cat. No.  | Description  |  |  |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| Power circuitry and components                               | 2198-Pxxx (DC-bus)<br>2198T-W25K-ER (iTRAK)   | A Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply (2198) and Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply (2198T) provide the DC bus voltages that are required for the iTRAK 5730 motor modules. The Kinetix 5700 power supply is used with other Kinetix 5700 components and branch circuit protection.  |  |  |  |  |
| Power and control input connector module                     | 2198T-CT-CP   | The power and control input connector module provides the power connection between the iTRAK power supply and a motor module and a communication connection from an EtherNet/IP network and a motor module. This module is used for the primary power and ground and Ethernet connections for your iTRAK 5730 system.  |  |  |  |  |
| Power input with control<br>pass-through connector<br>module | 2198T-CT-P  | The power input with control pass-through connector module provides the power connection between the iTRAK power supply and a motor module. This module is used to provide an additional power source connection when a system requires an additional Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply. This module provides a pass-through Ethernet connection only. For more information on when multiple iTRAK power supplies are required, see <u>Provide Power to the iTRAK System</u> on page <u>71</u> . |  |  |  |  |
| Power and control pass-<br>through connector module          | 2198T-CT  | The power and control pass-through connector module provides continuous power between the motor modules and communication with the EtherNet/IP network.  |  |  |  |  |
| Power cable  | 2198T-CHBFLS8-12AA06,<br>6 m (19.7 ft)<br>2198T-CHBFLS8-12AA09,<br>9 m (29.5 ft)<br>2198T-CHBFLS8-12AA12,<br>12 m (39.4 ft)<br>2198T-CHBFLS8-12AA15,<br>15 m (49.2 ft)<br>2198T-CHBFLS8-12AA30,<br>30 m (98.4 ft) | This cable provides DC-bus and control power from the iTRAK power supply to the power and control input and power input with control pass-through connector modules. Use only the cables that are referenced in this user manual.  |  |  |  |  |
| EtherNet/IP communication cable                              | 1585D-E8TGJM-1, 1 m (3.3 ft)<br>1585D-E8TGJM-2, 2 m (6.6 ft)<br>1585D-E8TGJM-3, 3 m (9.8 ft)<br>1585D-E8TGJM-5, 5 m (16.4 ft)<br>1585D-E8TGJM-10, 10 m (32.8 ft)  | This M12 X-code Ethernet cable provides EtherNet/IP communication to the power and control input connector module and connected motor modules. Use only the cables that are referenced in this user manual.  |  |  |  |  |
| Logix 5000® controller<br>platform                           | Bulletin 1756, Bulletin 1769, Bulletin<br>5069  | Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP network in ControlLogix® 5580, CompactLogix™ 5480, GuardLogix® 5580, and Compact GuardLogix 5380 controllers and Integrated Safety in Compact GuardLogix 5380 controllers. Linear, Device Level Ring (DLR), and star topologies are supported.  |  |  |  |  |
| Studio 5000® environment                                     | _   | Studio 5000 Logix Designer® application, version 33 or later, provides support to program, commission, and maintain the ControlLogix, CompactLogix, GuardLogix, and Compact GuardLogix controller families that you use with the iTRAK 5730 system.  |  |  |  |  |

| iTRAK 5730 Component | Cat. No.   | Description   |  |  |  |
|----------------------|--|---|--|--|--|
| Lubrication system   | 2198T-AL-SYS-4   | The lubrication system supplies lubricant to the rail system.   |  |  |  |
| Infield cover        | 2198T-AS-CD18-U (two curve<br>covers)<br>2198T-AS-CA03-U (one straight<br>cover)<br>2198T-AS-CD18 (two curve covers<br>with Allen-Bradley® logo) | These covers provide additional protection for the connector modules and power and Ethernet cable connections on the modules.               |  |  |  |
| Rail alignment tool  | 2198T-A08  | This tool is used to align the rectangular rail segments during installation to help provide an accurate transition of movers on the track. |  |  |  |
| Mover loader tool    | 2198T-A09  | This tool is used to install and remove a mover from the rail system.   |  |  |  |

Table 4 - Accessory Components of an iTRAK 5730 System

The typical configuration for iTRAK 5730 system is shown in Typical iTRAK System with an iTRAK Power Supply on page 70.

# **Catalog Number** Explanations

The modular, scalable design of the iTRAK 5730 allows you to purchase an assembled system or individual components so you can build a system that is suited to your specific application.

Use the information in this section to understand and identify the iTRAK 5730 assembled system and individual component catalog numbers.

### **Assembled iTRAK 5730 System**

These tables provide a catalog number explanation for an assembled iTRAK 5730 system.

For example: 2198T-S03H27000AD04008C-Q1234

| 2198T - | S | 03 | H | 270 | 000 | D | 04 | 008 | C · | Qxxxx |
|---------|---|----|---|-----|-----|---|----|-----|-----|-------|
| а       | b | С  | d | е   | f   | g | h  | i   | j   | k     |

| a<br>Bulletin Number |                                |    | b<br>Module Type             | c<br>Module Coil Width |                  |   | d<br>Orientation |  |  |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|----|------------------------------|------------------------|------------------|---|------------------|--|--|
| Code                 | Description                    | Co | ,                            | Code                   |                  | C | Code             | Description                                |  |
| 2198T                | iTRAK Intelligent Track System |    | Configured iTRAK 5730 system | 03                     | 30 mm (1.18 in.) |   | H                | Horizontal<br>(both dimensions horizontal) |  |
|                      |                                |    |                              |                        |                  | - | v                | Vertical                                   |  |

|                         | e   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Long Dimension (length) |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Code Description        |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ###                     | Curve center point width in<br>decimeters |  |  |  |  |  |  |

i

|                         | •   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Short Dimension (width) |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Code Description        |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| ###                     | Curve center point width in<br>decimeters |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 000                     | Oval                                      |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 00A                     | Linear                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|                         |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

| g                         |                           |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Mechanical Solution Style |                           |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Code                      | Description               |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| D                         | 5730 stainless-steel rail |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|                           | h                         |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Mover Magnet Stack Length |                           |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Code                      | Description               |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| 04                        | 38 mm (1.50 in.) (approx) |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

(short dimension vertical only) Stand up

(long dimension vertical only)

|            | k    |                          |  |  |  |  |  |
|------------|------|--------------------------|--|--|--|--|--|
| Customized |      |                          |  |  |  |  |  |
| C          | ode  | Description              |  |  |  |  |  |
| Q          | хххх | (Quote reference number) |  |  |  |  |  |

|         |   | Code | Description         |
|---------|---|------|---------------------|
| el rail |   | 04   | 38 mm (1.50 in.) (a |
|         | - |      |                     |

V

S

|    |                  | -                               |   |  |  |  |  |
|----|------------------|---------------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|
|    | Mover Quantity   | Power and Control Configuration |   |  |  |  |  |
| de | Description      | Code                            | Description                                   |  |  |  |  |
| ## | Number of movers | С                               | Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power<br>supply and cables |  |  |  |  |

Cod

##

### Modular iTRAK 5730 System Components

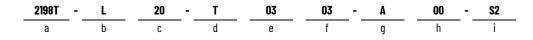
All iTRAK 5730 system component catalog numbers begin with the Bulletin number 2198T followed by a character that represents one of these module types:

- C Cable or connector
- L Integrated linear drive/motor module (section)
- M Mover magnet
- N Position magnet
- V Assembled mover

#### Motor Module (Section) Catalog Numbers

These tables provide an example catalog number explanation for a motor module.

For example: 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2



|       | a<br>Bulletin Number           |      | b<br>Module Type       | c<br>Nominal Voltage |                  |  | d<br>Motor Orientation |             |  |
|-------|--------------------------------|------|------------------------|----------------------|------------------|--|------------------------|-------------|--|
| Code  | Description                    | Code | Description            | Code                 | Code Description |  |                        | Description |  |
| coue  | Description                    | coue | Description            | Cour                 | Description      |  | Code                   | Description |  |
| 2198T | iTRAK Intelligent Track System | L    | Motor module (section) | 20                   | 200/400V bus     |  | Т                      | Transverse  |  |

| е                |                  | f            |                                      |             | g    |               |  |      | h                                     | i |      |                                |  |
|------------------|------------------|--------------|--------------------------------------|-------------|------|---------------|--|------|---------------------------------------|---|------|--------------------------------|--|
| Motor Coil Width |                  | Motor Length |                                      | Radius Type |      | Arc Angle     |  |      | Functional Safety                     |   |      |                                |  |
| Code             | Description      | Code         | Description                          |             | Code | Description   |  | Code | Description                           |   | Code | Description                    |  |
| 03               | 30 mm (1.18 in.) | 03           | 300 mm<br>(11.81 in.) <sup>(1)</sup> |             | А    | Linear        |  | 00   | Linear <sup>(1)</sup>                 |   | S2   | Integrated Network Safe Stop 1 |  |
|                  |                  | 09           | 900 mm<br>(35.43 in.) <sup>(2)</sup> |             | D    | Narrow spline |  | 18   | 180° (diameter varies) <sup>(2)</sup> |   |      |                                |  |

(1) Only available for position g, code A.

(2) Only available for position g, Code D.

#### **Connector Module Catalog Numbers**

These tables provide an example catalog number explanation for a connector module.

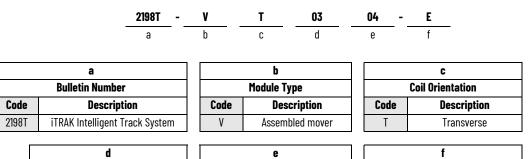
For example: 2198T-CT-CP

|       | а                              |      | b   | C<br>Input Option |   |  |  |
|-------|--------------------------------|------|---|-------------------|---|--|--|
|       | Bulletin Number                |      | Module Type                                   |                   |   |  |  |
| Code  | Description                    | Code | Description                                   | Code              | Description                                     |  |  |
| 2198T | iTRAK Intelligent Track System | CT   | Connector terminal<br>(between motor modules) | СР                | Communication and power inputs                  |  |  |
|       |                                |      |   | Р                 | Power input with communication pass-<br>through |  |  |
|       |                                |      |   | <blanks></blanks> | Communication and power pass-through            |  |  |

Assembled Mover Catalog Numbers

These tables provide an example catalog number explanation for an assembled mover.

#### For example: 2198T-VT0304-E

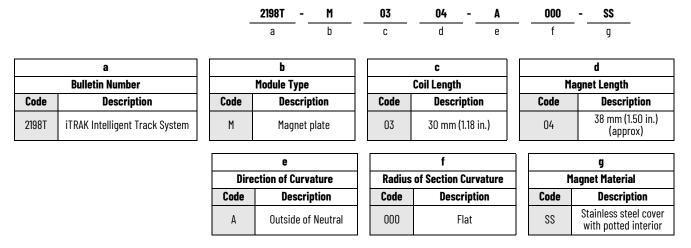


|             | u                |   |      | e                         | I                    |             |  |
|-------------|------------------|---|------|---------------------------|----------------------|-------------|--|
| Coil Length |                  |   |      | Magnet Length             | Mover Identification |             |  |
| Code        | Description      | Γ | Code | Description               | Code                 | Description |  |
| 03          | 30 mm (1.18 in.) |   | 04   | 38 mm (1.50 in.) (approx) | E                    | 57xx Design |  |

#### Mover Magnet Plate Catalog Numbers

These tables provide an example catalog number explanation for a mover magnet plate.

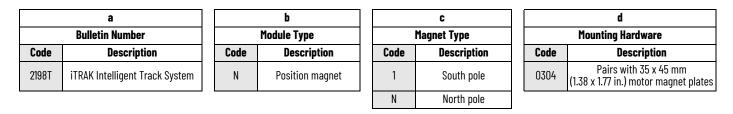
#### For example: 2198T-M0304-A000-SS



**Position Magnet Catalog Numbers** 

These tables provide an example catalog number explanation for a position magnet.

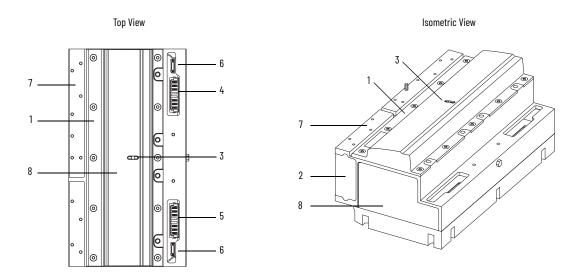
For example: 2198T-N1-0304



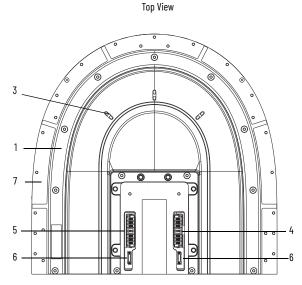
# **Motor Modules**

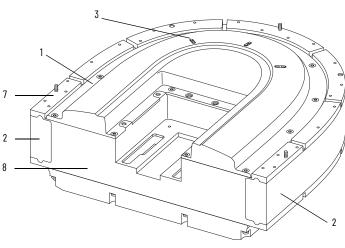
Your iTRAK 5730 system can use two types of motor modules. <u>Figure 3</u> shows the features of the straight motor module and <u>Figure 4</u> shows the features of the curved motor module.

#### Figure 3 - 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2, Straight Motor Module



#### Figure 4 - 2198T-L20-T0309-D18-S2, Curved Motor Module





Isometric View

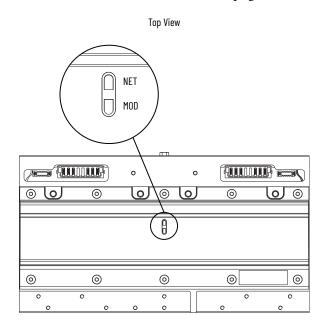
#### **Motor Module Components**

| ltem | Description  |
|------|--|
| 1    | Mover position-magnet sensing area                       |
| 2    | Motor coil assembly                                      |
| 3    | Status indicators  |
| 4    | Incoming power bus connection (from<br>connector module) |

| ltem | Description  |
|------|--|
| 5    | Outgoing power bus connection (from<br>connector module) |
| 6    | Ethernet connector (from connector module)               |
| 7    | Rectangular and flat rail mounting surface               |
| 8    | Drive housing  |

### **Motor Module Status Indicators**

The motor modules (2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2 and 2198T-L20-T0309-D18-S2) contain the following status indicators. For a description of these status indicators, see <u>Motor Module Status Indicators</u> on page <u>126</u>.



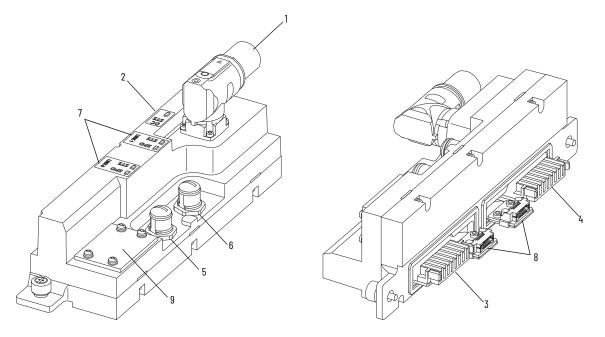
Straight Motor Module (Catalog Number 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2) shown.

## **Connector Modules**

The iTRAK 5730 system can use three types of connector modules:

- <u>Figure 5</u> shows the features of the power and control input connector module. This connector module provides a power source and Ethernet connection for the iTRAK 5730 system.
- <u>Figure 6</u> shows the features of the power input with control passthrough connector module. This connector module provides a secondary power source connection and continuous Ethernet connection for the iTRAK 5730 system.
- <u>Figure 7</u> shows the features of the power and control pass-through connector module. This connector module provides a continuous power bus and Ethernet connection for the iTRAK 5730 system.

#### Figure 5 - 2198T-CT-CP Power and Control Input Connector Module

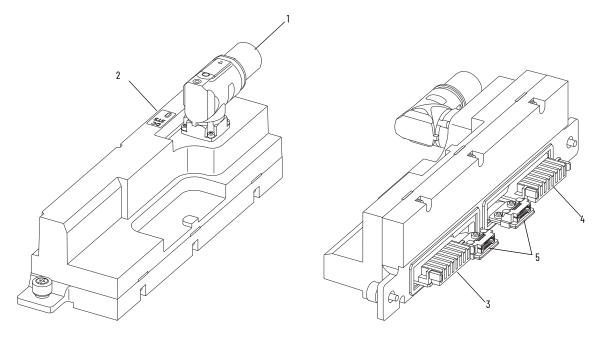


#### **Power and Control Input Connector-module Components**

| ltem | Description                          | ltem | Description  |
|------|--------------------------------------|------|--|
| 1    | Incoming power bus connector         | 6    | Outgoing Ethernet network connector  |
| 2    | Power status indicator               | 7    | Network status indicators  |
| 3    | Motor power and ground bus connector | 8    | Pass-through Ethernet network connectors   |
| 4    | Motor power ground connector         | 9    | EtherNet/IP address selectors and control DIP switch (below access cover) <sup>(1)</sup> |
| 5    | Incoming Ethernet network connector  | _    |  |
|      |                                      |      |  |

(1) See <u>Connect an EtherNet/IP Network to the iTRAK 5730 System</u> on page <u>75</u> for details on these switches.

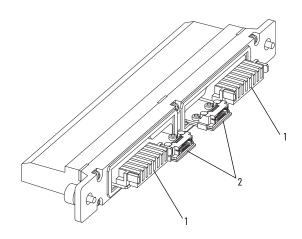
#### Figure 6 - 2198T-CT-P Power Input With Control Pass-through Connector Module



#### Power Input with Control Pass-through Connector-module Components

| ltem | Description                          | ltem | Description                              |
|------|--------------------------------------|------|--|
| 1    | Incoming power bus connector         | 4    | Ground connector                         |
| 2    | Power status indicator               |      | Pass-through Ethernet network connectors |
| 3    | Motor power and ground bus connector | - 5  |  |



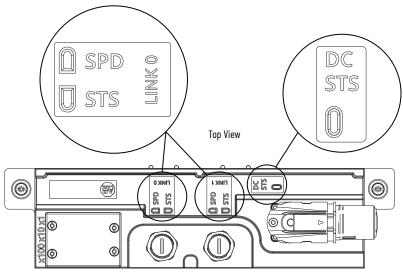


#### Power and Control Pass-through Connector-module Components

| ltem | Description                          | ltem | Description                              |
|------|--------------------------------------|------|--|
| 1    | Motor power and ground bus connector | 2    | Pass-through Ethernet network connectors |

### **Connector Module Status Indicators**

The power and control input (2198T-CT-CP) and power input with control pass-through (2198T-CT-P) connector modules contain the following status indicators. These indicators provide a visual status of the power and communication connections. For a description of these status indicators, see <u>Connector Module Status Indicators</u> on page <u>128</u>.



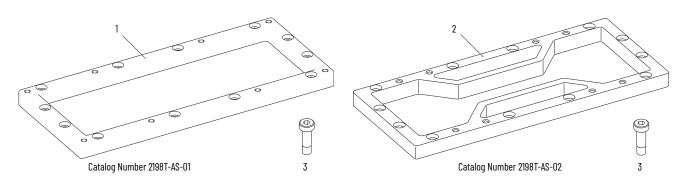
Power and Control Input Connector Module (Catalog Number 2198T-CT-CP) shown.

# **Mounting Rings**

The mounting rings are used to connect motor modules and provide rigidity to the iTRAK 5730 system. Each mounting ring includes the hardware that is required to connect to the motor modules. An equal number of top and bottom mounting rings are required for installation.

**IMPORTANT** To be sure that the mounting rings are secured to the connected motor modules and support the iTRAK system properly, you must use the fasteners that are provided with the kit. Customer-supplied fasteners can affect system operation and structural integrity.

#### Figure 8 - 2198T-AS-01 and 2198T-AS-02 Mounting Rings



#### **Mounting Ring Components**

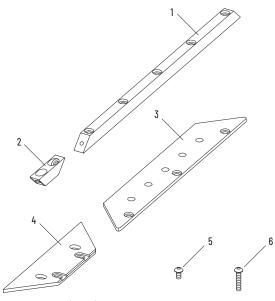
| ltem | Description          | Item | Description                  |
|------|----------------------|------|------------------------------|
| 1    | Top mounting ring    | 3    | M6 Reamer bolt, 20 mm (0.79) |
| 2    | Bottom mounting ring |      |                              |

### **Rectangular and Flat Rails**

The straight rectangular and flat rail kits are installed on the straight motor modules. Straight rectangular and flat rail kits are available in 300 mm (11.8 in.), 600 mm (23.6 in.), and 900 mm (35.4 in.) lengths. Each kit contains two straight rectangular rails and rectangular rail wedges and two straight flat rails and flat rail wedges. All mounting hardware is included with the kits.

**IMPORTANT** To be sure that the rails are secured and aligned to the motor modules properly, you must use the fasteners that are provided with the kits. Customer-supplied fasteners can affect system operation.

Figure 9 - 2198T-BE-ST03, 2198T-BE-ST06, and 2198T-BE-ST09 Straight Rectangular and Flat Rails



300 mm (11.8 in.) Straight Rectangular and Flat Rail Kit (Catalog Number 2198T-BE-ST03)

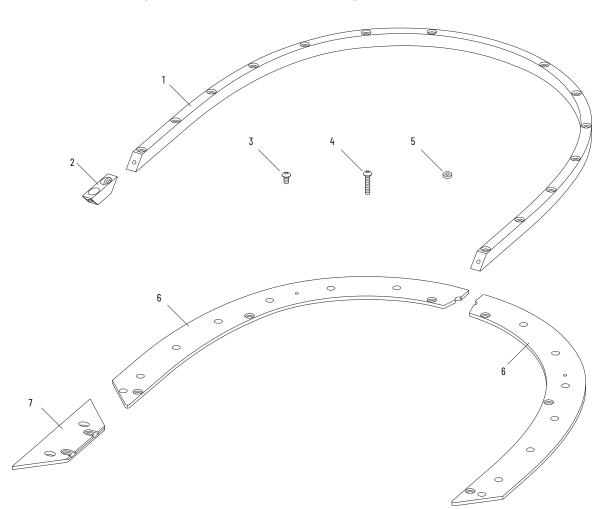
#### Straight Rectangular and Flat Rail Components

| ltem | Description                     | ltem | D |
|------|---------------------------------|------|---|
| 1    | Straight rectangular rail       | 4    | S |
| 2    | Straight rectangular rail wedge | 5    | ٢ |
| 3    | Straight flat rail              | 6    | Μ |

| ltem | Description                     |
|------|---------------------------------|
| 4    | Straight flat rail wedge        |
| 5    | M4 Torx screw, 8 mm (0.31 in.)  |
| 6    | M4 Torx screw, 20 mm (0.79 in.) |

The curved rectangular and flat rails are installed on the curved motor modules. Curved rectangular and flat rails (2198T-BE-ED18) are approximately 900 mm (35.4 in.) long. Each kit contains two curved rectangular rails and straight rectangular rail wedges and four curved flat rails and two flat wedges. All mounting hardware is included with the kits. The kit also contains four Orings, which are installed in cavities on the curved motor modules and curved rectangular rails. The O-rings provide a seal for lubrication ports.

Figure 10 - 2198T-BE-ED18 Curved Rectangular and Flat Rails



#### **Curved Rectangular and Flat Rail Components**

| ltem | Description                     |
|------|---------------------------------|
| 1    | Curved rectangular rail         |
| 2    | Straight rectangular rail wedge |
| 3    | M4 Torx screw, 20 mm (0.79 in.) |
| 4    | M4 Torx screw, 8 mm (0.31 in.)  |

| ltem | Description              |
|------|--------------------------|
| 5    | 0-ring                   |
| 6    | Curved flat rail         |
| 7    | Straight flat rail wedge |

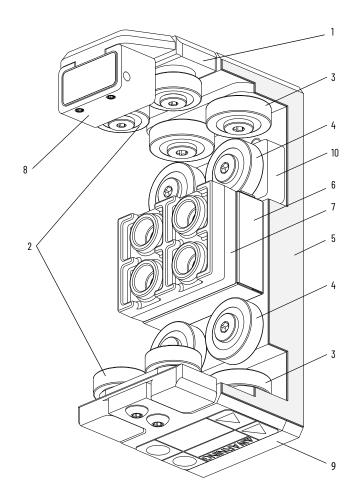
## **Mover**

Movers are 50 mm (2.0 in.) long, in the direction of travel. See the iTRAK 5730 System Technical Data, publication <u>2198T-TD002</u> for the force-speed curves. Do not exceed the force-speed parameters when programming your system.



**ATTENTION:** A hazard of personal injury or equipment damage exists. An uninstalled mover must always have the motor-magnet protective cover (item 7 in Figure 11) installed. This cover should be removed only at the time of installation. Before handling a mover with a mover magnet installed, read the <u>Safety Information</u> that begins on page <u>32</u>.

Figure 11 - 2198T-VT0304-E, Mover



#### **Assembled Mover Components**

| ltem | Description   |
|------|---|
| 1    | Horizontal bearing block                              |
| 2    | Track roller, 19 mm (0.75 in.) horizontal set<br>(x4) |
| 3    | Track roller, 22 mm (0.87 in.) horizontal set<br>(x4) |
| 4    | Track roller, 22 mm (0.87 in.) vertical set (x4)      |
| 5    | Bumper  |

| ltem | Description   |
|------|---|
| 6    | Motor magnet  |
| 7    | Motor-magnet protective cover (removed at time of installation only)                      |
| 8    | Position feedback magnet assembly<br>(north and south, sold separately from the<br>mover) |
| 9    | Mover chassis assembly  |
| 10   | Vertical bearing block  |

## **Power Supplies**

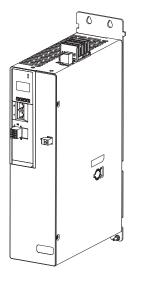
Power is supplied to the iTRAK 5730 system by using a scalable Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply. See <u>Provide Power to the iTRAK System</u> on page 71 for more information on the required iTRAK power supply and system power requirements.

The iTRAK power supply is used in combination with a Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply as part of a Kinetix 5700 system.

- For Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply installation instructions, see the Kinetix 5700 iTRAK Power Supply and iTRAK Bus Conditioner Module Installation Instructions, publication <u>2198T-IN001.</u>
- For Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply details and use, see the Kinetix 5700 Servo Drives User Manual, publication <u>2198-UM002.</u>

When using the Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply, you must use firmware revision 12.001 or later. If you are using a Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply at lower firmware revisions, contact ICTSupport@ra.rockwell.com for assistance and selection.

#### Figure 12 - 2198T-W25K-ER iTRAK Power Supply



# **Programmable Controllers**

The iTRAK 5730 is designed to work with the programmable controllers that are shown in <u>Table 5</u>.

#### Table 5 - Compatible Controllers

| Platform           | Controller          | Compatible Firmware Revision |
|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------------|
| ControlLogix       | 5580                | 33.001 or later              |
| CompactLogix       | 5380 <sup>(1)</sup> | 33.001 or later              |
|                    | 5480                | 33.001 or later              |
| GuardLogix         | 5580                | 33.001 or later              |
| Compact GuardLogix | 5380                | 33.001 or later              |

 The memory requirements and CPU utilization of typical iTRAK applications can reduce the possible catalog numbers available in these families. Work with Rockwell Automation application engineering to determine suitability.

# Typical Communication Configurations

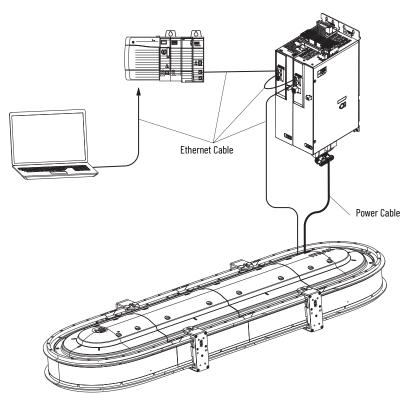
The iTRAK 5730 system supports linear, ring (Device Level Ring), and star Ethernet topologies, by using ControlLogix, GuardLogix, CompactLogix, or Compact GuardLogix controllers and Stratix<sup>®</sup> Ethernet switch (where applicable).

The power and control input connector module (cat. no. 2198T-CT-CP) provides ports for Ethernet network connections and contains rotary switches for defining a manual or dynamic IP address scheme that is used for your iTRAK 5730 system.

# **Linear Topology**

The iTRAK 5730 connector modules include dual-port connectivity, however, if any device becomes disconnected, all devices downstream of that device lose communication. The devices in this example are connected by using linear topology.

#### Figure 13 - iTRAK 5730 System Linear Communication Installation



### **Device Level Ring Topology**

Device Level Ring (DLR) is an EtherNet/IP protocol that is defined by ODVA. DLR provides a means to detect, manage, and recover from single faults in a ring-based network.

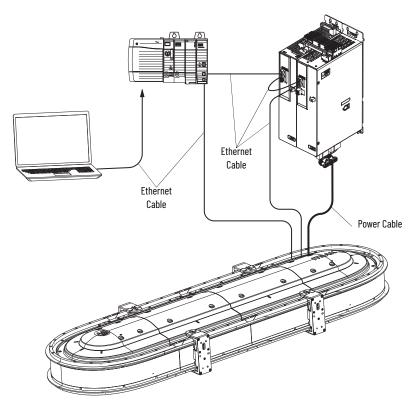
A DLR network includes the following types of ring nodes.

| Node                             | Description   |  |  |
|----------------------------------|---|--|--|
| Ring supervisor                  | A ring supervisor provides these functions:<br>• Manages traffic on the DLR network<br>• Collects diagnostic information for the network<br>A DLR network requires at least one node to be configured as ring supervisor.<br>By default, the supervisor function is disabled on supervisor-capable devices.                                   |  |  |
| Ring participants                | Ring participants provide these functions:<br>• Process data that is transmitted over the network.<br>• Pass on the data to the next node on the network.<br>• Report fault locations to the active ring supervisor.<br>When a fault occurs on the DLR network, ring participants reconfigure themselves and<br>relearn the network topology. |  |  |
| Redundant gateways<br>(optional) | Redundant gateways are multiple switches that are connected to a DLR network and also connected together through the rest of the network. Redundant gateways provide DLR network resiliency to the rest of the network.   |  |  |

Depending on their firmware capabilities, both devices and switches can operate as supervisors or ring nodes on a DLR network. Only switches can operate as redundant gateways.

For more information about DLR, see the EtherNet/IP Device Level Ring Application Technique, publication <u>ENET-AT007</u>.

#### Figure 14 - iTRAK 5730 System Ring Communication Installation

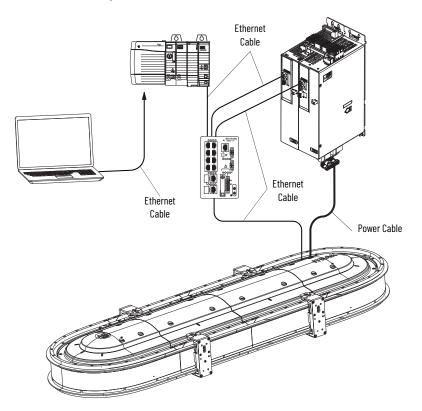


### **Star Topology**

In a star topology, each device is connected directly to an Ethernet switch. In this example, the devices are connected by using star topology.

The iTRAK 5730 connector modules have dual ports, so linear topology is maintained from one module to another, but the iTRAK 5730 system and other devices operate independently. The loss of one device does not impact the operation of other devices.

Figure 15 - iTRAK 5730 System Star Communication Installation



# **Safety Information**

Follow all safety information that is presented in this section while working with or near an iTRAK 5730 system.



**SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid a shock hazard or personal injury, make sure that all power has been removed before proceeding. Complete lockout and tagout procedures to remove input power before servicing.

Before installation, read the <u>General Assembly Instructions</u>. For applicable installations, before working with an iTRAK 5730 system or components, review the declaration of conformity and declaration of incorporation that are appropriate for your installation. All certification information, including the following declarations of conformity and declarations of incorporation can be viewed at: <u>rok.auto/certifications</u>.

- EU:
  - EU Declaration of Conformity, Directive 2006/42/EC
  - 2198T Series iTRAK 5730 System without PCM CE Declaration of Incorporation, publication <u>2198T-CToo8</u>
  - 2198T Kinetix iTRAK 5730 System with PCM CE Declaration of Incorporation, publication <u>2198T-CT009</u>
- UK:
  - UK Declaration of Conformity, Regulation 2008 No. 1597
  - 2198T Series iTRAK 5730 System without PCM UK Declaration of Incorporation, publication <u>2198T-CT021</u>
  - 2198T Kinetix iTRAK 5730 System with PCM UK Declaration of Incorporation, publication <u>2198T-CT023</u>

The iTRAK 5730 system is partially completed machinery. This machinery must not be put into service until the final machinery into which it is to be incorporated has been declared in conformity with the relevant provisions of the Machinery Directive or UK Supply of Machinery (Safety) Regulations.

#### Risk Assessment

A risk assessment must be prepared for the installation of the machine, within its application conditions, and with the system components installed. As a result of the risk assessment, you must implement functions that monitor and provide for a higher-level measurement of personal safety. The safety regulations applicable to the installation of the machine must be considered. Unintended machine movements or other malfunctions are possible if safety devices are disabled, bypassed, or not activated.

### **General Assembly Instructions**

Follow these overall assembly instructions during installation of your iTRAK 5730 system.

- When integrating the iTRAK 5730 system with tools and external machinery, see <u>https://motionanalyzer.rockwellautomation.com/</u><u>Products/iTrak</u> for models and outline drawings.
- See the iTRAK 5730 System Technical Data, publication <u>2198T-TD002</u> for operational ratings. Do not exceed these ratings.
- The iTRAK 5730 system must only be used in the environment specified.
- See <u>Chapter 2</u> Track Installation and Kinetix 5700 iTRAK Power Supply and iTRAK Bus Conditioner Module Installation Instructions, publication <u>2198T-IN001</u> for system installation instructions.
- Although system components have IP65 protection (IP66 with infield cover in place), the mover track rollers exposure to water must be minimized, as they can corrode over time.
- Track rails must be lubricated. See <u>Install the Lubrication System</u> on page <u>63</u> for details.
- If necessary, additional precautions must be taken to help prevent excess lubrication from product contamination or external machinery.
- Power and data cables must be managed or located to help prevent trip hazards for machine operators.
- When you install tools on movers, consider that there can be high accelerations and forces, in particular when movers transition between straight and curved modules.
  - Consider the mass and center of gravity of the tools that are mounted to movers.
  - When you fasten tools and machinery to movers, use the two dowel pins, and four 5 mm (0.20 in.) screws. Be sure that the screws engage at least 10 mm (0.39 in.) of thread and the screw is locked in place.
  - When you load movers with product, be sure that they are fastened securely for all anticipated forces and accelerations.
- Do not install ferromagnetic material near the movers. Maintain a minimum distance of 50 mm (2.0 in.) for any installed ferromagnetic material.
- Help prevent the risk of operator contact with parts that move by the use of guards and protective devices. See <u>Machine Guarding</u> for more information.
- Complete all installation instructions as directed in this manual. The National Electrical Code (NEC) and local codes outline provisions for safe installation of electrical equipment.



**ATTENTION:** A hazard of personal injury or equipment damage exists. An E-stop is not provided with the iTRAK 5730 System. Consult your national and local electrical codes and provide an E-stop if necessary.

• Control systems must be designed and constructed in such a way as to help prevent hazardous situations from occurring. See <u>Chapter 7</u> -<u>iTRAK 5730 System Integrated Safety</u>. Movers can fall when motor power is removed or servo control is disabled on vertical or stand-up iTRAK 5730 system installations.



**ATTENTION:** A hazard of equipment damage or personal injury exists. Movers can fall when motor power is removed or servo control is disabled on vertical or standup iTRAK 5730 system installations. Control systems must be designed and constructed in such a way as to help prevent hazardous situations from occurring. See <u>Chapter 7</u> - <u>iTRAK 5730 System Integrated Safety</u> on page <u>173</u>.

### **Machine Guarding**

The movers, which contain application loads, can have high acceleration. The movers experience more acceleration in the curved sections of the track due to vector directional changes. Machine guards and safety enclosures must be implemented to offer protection to personnel. The shielding and enclosure must be designed to help protect against tangential projectiles along the system perimeter.

### Avoid Accidents, Injury, and Property Damage

Follow these guidelines to help avoid accidents, injury, and property damage:

- Mount emergency stop switches in the immediate reach of the operator.
- Keep free and clear of the range of motion of the machine and the parts that move. Help prevent personnel from accidentally entering the range of motion by using:
  - Safety fences
  - Protective coverings
  - Safety guards
- Safety fences and protective coverings must be strong enough to resist the maximum kinetic energy of the system. See <u>Machine Guarding on page 34</u>.
- Light barriers are not recommended without a detailed risk assessment, due to the high kinetic energy of the movers.
- Avoid the operation of high-frequency, remote control, and radio equipment near system electronics and the power supply cables. If the use of a high-frequency, remote control, or radio device is necessary, check that the device does not interfere or cause malfunctions in the machine operation. We recommend performing an electromagnetic compatibility test before putting the system into service.

### **Remove Power from the iTRAK 5730 System**

- 1. Stop the motion of all movers.
- 2. If your system uses a vertical or stand-up mounting orientation (see <u>Figure 1 on page 13</u>), then when power is removed, any movers that are on the non-horizontal parts of the track fall. Take this consideration into account in your application design. To help prevent movers from falling, there are multiple actions that you can take before removing power:
  - For vertical orientations: You may be able to move all movers to horizontal parts of the track where they will not fall when power is removed.
  - For stand-up orientations: Move all movers so that they are grouped at the lowest point in the track. Make sure the highest mover on each side of the group is at the same height as the other, so that they are in equilibrium and will not move when power is removed.
  - For vertical or stand-up orientations: Mechanically secure the movers that are on non-horizontal parts of the track using an external brake, arrester, or clamp mechanism; use protective equipment such as heat protective gloves to avoid burn hazards while installing the mover securing mechanisms. See <u>Protection Against Contact with Hot Parts on page 35</u>.
- 3. Remove mains input power from the system.
- 4. Remove 24V DC control power from the system.
- 5. Before proceeding with installation or maintenance tasks, wait at least 5 minutes to avoid electric shock hazard, and whatever time is necessary for the system to cool to avoid burn hazard. Cooling can take up to 140 minutes.

### **Avoid Electrical Shock**



**SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid a shock hazard or personal injury, verify that all power has been removed before proceeding with installation or maintenance tasks. The motor modules and Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply require 5 minutes to discharge before you handle wire and cable connections.

### **Protection Against Contact with Hot Parts**



**BURN HAZARD:** A burn hazard exists. Some components of the system have hot surfaces. To avoid personal injury, do not touch hot surfaces as indicated by a burn hazard label.

Temperatures of the motor-module stator covers can be higher than 60° C (140° F) during or after operation. After you remove power from the iTRAK 5730 system, motor modules can require up to 140 minutes to cool. Let the motor modules cool before you touch or service the system.

One exception to the rule to wait for cooling before touching the system is when removing power to a vertical or stand-up system. In this situation, you may want to install mechanical securing mechanisms onto the movers on the non-horizontal parts of the track before removing power, to help prevent them from falling when power is removed. Therefore, the system is still powered and hot while installing the mechanical securing mechanisms. To help prevent burns, use heat protective gloves and any other necessary protective equipment while installing the mechanical securing mechanisms. Also follow these precautions when removing the mechanical securing mechanisms, because power is on and the motors are producing heat during the removal of the mover securing mechanisms.

# Protection Against Magnetic and Electromagnetic Fields During Installation and Use

The motor modules, when in use, and mover magnets pose a danger to persons with heart pacemakers, metal implants, and hearing aids.



**ATTENTION:** The mover uses strong magnets. There is a risk of health hazard for persons with heart pacemakers, metal implants, and hearing aids while in proximity of magnetic components and the magnetic field produced by components. The magnetic field that is generated can disrupt the functionality of an automatic implantable cardioverter defibrillator (AICD). People with cardiac pacemakers must not work near the iTRAK 5730 system.



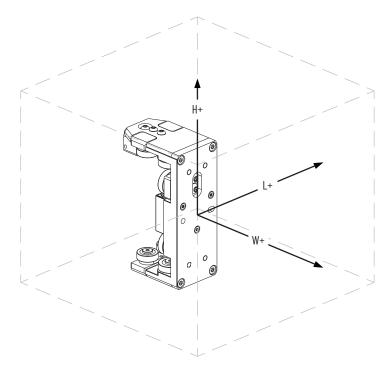
**ATTENTION:** A pinch point hazard exists while installing a mover. A mover can have sudden and fast motion due to magnetic attraction. To avoid personal injury, do not put your fingers between the mover and the motor module.

Magnetic Field Strength

The iTRAK 5730 system movers contain components with strong magnetic fields. The motor modules also produce magnetic fields while movers are being commanded. This section provides the strength of the magnetic field for an uninstalled mover, an installed and enabled mover, and an uninstalled position magnet.

When motion is present on the system, the magnetic field does not exceed 0.05 mT at 500 mm (19.7 in.) in any direction from the track. Ferrous metals can influence the magnetic field direction and strength. For the most accurate data, measure the magnetic field strength on a track that is installed in its final configuration.

#### Figure 16 - Mover Magnetic Field Orientation



<u>Table 6</u> lists the magnetic field strength at distances from the center point of an uninstalled mover. Maintain these minimum distances to avoid interaction with the magnetic field.

### Table 6 - Magnetic Field Strength of an Uninstalled Mover

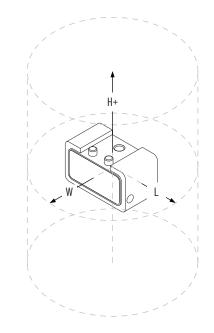
|                |                            |                       |                       |                            |                            | Magnetic S            | trength               |                            |                     |                       |                       |                            |
|----------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|
| Cat. No.       |                            | 0.05 mT               |                       |                            | 0.1 mT                     |                       |                       | 0.5 mT                     |                     |                       |                       |                            |
|                | <b>L (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>W+</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>W-</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>H (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>L (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>W+</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>W-</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>H (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) | L (+/-)<br>mm (in.) | <b>W+</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>W-</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>H (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) |
|                |                            |                       |                       |                            |                            |                       |                       |                            |                     |                       |                       |                            |
| 2198T-VT0304-E | 200 (7.9)                  | 120 (4.7)             | 190 (7.5)             | 150 (6.0)                  | 170 (6.7)                  | 90 (3.5)              | 150 (6.0)             | 120 (4.7)                  | 105 (4.1)           | 40 (1.6)              | 95 (3.7)              | 70 (2.8)                   |

<u>Table 7</u> lists the magnetic field strength at distances from the center point of a mover that is installed on a track. Maintain these minimum distances to avoid interaction with the magnetic field.

### Table 7 - Magnetic Field Strength of an Installed Mover, Enabled at Zero Speed

|                | Magnetic Strength          |                       |                            |                            |                       |                            |                            |                       |                            |  |
|----------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------|--|
| Cat. No.       | 0.05 mT                    |                       |                            | 0.1 mT                     |                       |                            | 0.5 mT                     |                       |                            |  |
|                | <b>L (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>W+</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>H (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>L (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>W+</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>H (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>L (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>W+</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>H (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) |  |
| 2198T-VT0304-E | 230 (9.0)                  | 90 (3.5)              | 85 (3.3)                   | 180 (7.0)                  | 60 (2.4)              | 70 (2.8)                   | 110 (4.3)                  | 25 (1.0)              | 66 (2.6)                   |  |

### **Figure 17 - Position Magnet Field Orientation**



<u>Table 8</u> lists the magnetic field strength at distances from the center point of an uninstalled position magnet. Maintain these minimum distances to avoid interaction with the magnetic field.

|                                | Magnetic Strength |                      |                            |               |               |                            |               |               |                            |  |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------------------|--|
| Cat. No.                       | 0.05 mT           |                      |                            | 0.1 mT        |               |                            | 0.5 mT        |               |                            |  |
|                                | L<br>mm (in.)     | <b>W</b><br>mm (in.) | <b>H (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) | L<br>mm (in.) | ₩<br>mm (in.) | <b>H (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) | L<br>mm (in.) | ₩<br>mm (in.) | <b>H (+/-)</b><br>mm (in.) |  |
| 2198T-N1-0304<br>2198T-NN-0304 | 130 (5.1)         | 100 (4.0)            | 100 (4.0)                  | 105 (4.1)     | 85 (3.3)      | 85 (3.3)                   | 65 (2.6)      | 50 (2.0)      | 50 (2.0)                   |  |

### **Safe Magnet Handling**



**ATTENTION:** The strong magnets on the mover can attract metal objects that are in its proximity. When you handle and install movers with motor magnetic plates, maintain a distance between the mover and ferrous metal mounting surfaces or structures.

Maintenance personnel must avoid the use of metallic tools and secure items such as badge clips and other personal effects that could be attracted to the strong magnetic field.

Strong magnets can erase magnetic media. Never let credit cards or electronic media contact or get near the mover and motor magnet or iTRAK 5730 system.

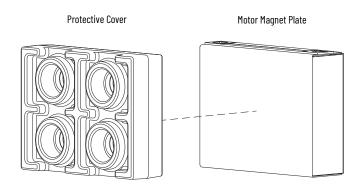
- The track creates strong magnetic fields while energized during operation.
- Persons with heart pacemakers, metal implants, or hearing aids must not enter these places:
  - Areas where the iTRAK 5730 system components are mounted, commissioned, and operated.
  - Areas where strong magnets are stored, repaired, or mounted.

### **Motor Magnet Protective Cover**

Exposed or uninstalled motor magnet plates, whether they are mounted to a mover or freestanding, must always have the protective cover installed. The cover is only removed at the time of mover installation on the track system. The cover provides some protection for safe handling. Always handle an exposed motor magnet plate with caution.

- The motor magnet plate with a protective cover installed must be kept at least 305 mm (12 in.) away from other motor magnet plates and other ferrous metal parts such as hardware and tools.
- Magnet plates without a protective cover must be kept a minimum of 1 m (3.3 ft) away from other magnet plates and ferrous metal parts.

### Figure 18 - Motor Magnet Plate and Protective Cover



# **iTRAK 5730 System Installation**

Use this chapter to assemble and mount an iTRAK® 5730 and install a lubrication system.

| Торіс                          | Page |
|--------------------------------|------|
| Safety Information             | 39   |
| Before You Begin               | 40   |
| iTRAK System Components        | 41   |
| Inspection                     | 42   |
| Approximate Dimensions         | 43   |
| Assemble an iTRAK 5730 System  | 43   |
| Mount the iTRAK 5730 Assembly  | 58   |
| Install the Lubrication System | 63   |
| Optional Infield Covers        | 67   |

Consider the following when planning the location for your iTRAK 5730 installation:

- Overall finished assembly dimensions
- Future product expansion
- Alignment with other equipment
- Installation of safety guards
- System cable lengths
- Vibration free surfaces
- Operator access to iTRAK components and lubrication system

# **Safety Information**

Before you begin assembly, read the <u>Safety Information</u> on page <u>32</u>.



**ATTENTION:** To reduce the risk of injury and property damage, read the <u>Safety</u><u>Information</u> on page <u>32</u> before you start the installation of the system.



**WARNING:** Improper use or modification of system components, failure to follow the safety instructions, or disabling safety devices can result in property damage, injury, electric shock, or death.

# **Before You Begin**

Review the information in this section before you begin assembly or maintenance on your iTRAK 5730 system.

### **Tools and Accessories**

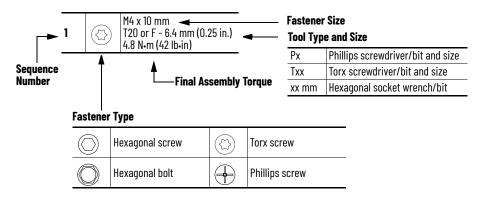
<u>Table 9</u> provides a list of the tools that are required to assemble and install an iTRAK 5730 system.

 Table 9 - Required Tools/Accessories

| Tool                               | Details  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| Hex bit                            | 4 mm   |
| Hexagonal socket                   | 10 mm (for optional infield covers)  |
| Phillips bit                       | #2   |
| Torx bit                           | T20  |
| Torque wrench                      | Electronic or manual, 2.256.8 N•m (2060 lb•in)   |
| 2x4 lumber (or similar)            | Used to support the partially assembled system on the work surface. A 200 mm (7.9 in.) long section for each mounting ring in your system. |
| Lint free cloth                    | Used to clean system rail components   |
| Isopropyl alcohol                  | Used to clean system rail components   |
| Rail alignment tool<br>(2198T-A08) | Used to align the rectangular rails for proper installation (recommended)  |
| Mover loader tool<br>(2198T-A09)   | Used to install or remove movers (recommended)   |

### **Hardware Specification Table**

The assembly illustrations throughout this section contain hardware specification tables (as shown here) that identify the following: sequence number (if necessary), type of fastener, fastener size, tool type and size, and final assembly torque.



### **Installation Workspace**

Consider the following when preparing the installation workspace:

- The work surface must be flat, level, and clean
- The work surface must support the full assembled weight of the product
- An elevated work surface is recommended

### **General Handling Instructions**

Rockwell Automation recommends that you follow these handling instructions for an assembled iTRAK 5730:

- Use properly rated equipment and hardware to lift and move the product.
- Qualified professionals must inspect all lifting equipment before it is used to move the product.
- All lifting cables or straps must meet or exceed the maximum weight capacity requirements.
- Wear appropriate personal protection equipment (PPE), including gloves, safety glasses, and safety shoes, when working with kit components and assembling the product.

### Storage

If you must store motor and connector modules after you receive them, take the following precautions:

- Do not store the equipment outdoors
- Do not store the equipment in a corrosive or humid environment
- If opened, reseal and store the equipment in the shipping container
- Store the equipment in a clean and dry location

# **iTRAK System Components**

This section identifies the modules and components that are required to assemble an iTRAK 5730. Use this section to verify that you have received the parts that are required for each kit in your installation.

| Kit Description                     | Catalog Number         | Kit Contents   | <b>Weight</b><br>[kg (lb)] | Quantity Required               |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------|--|----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Straight motor module               | 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2 | 300 mm (11.8 in.) long straight motor section  | 8.6 (18.8)                 | As required for the application |
| Curved motor module                 | 2198T-L20-T0309-D18-S2 | 350 mm (13.8 in.) long, 900 mm (35.4 in.) total length, curvilinear motor section  | 21.0 (46.3)                | As required for the application |
| 300 mm (11.8 in.) Straight rail kit | 2198T-BE-ST03          | <ul> <li>300 mm (11.8 in.) long:</li> <li>2 straight rectangular rails</li> <li>2 straight rectangular wedges</li> <li>2 straight flat rails</li> <li>2 straight flat wedges</li> <li>14 M4 x 8 mm Torx screws</li> <li>10 M4 x 20 mm Torx screws</li> </ul> | 1.0 (2.2)                  | One per system (recommended)    |
| 600 mm (23.6 in.) Straight rail kit | 2198T-BE-ST06          | <ul> <li>600 mm (23.6 in.) long:</li> <li>2 straight rectangular rails</li> <li>2 straight rectangular wedges</li> <li>2 straight flat rails</li> <li>2 straight flat wedges</li> <li>20 M4 x 8 mm Torx screws</li> <li>20 M4 x 20 mm Torx screws</li> </ul> | 2.0 (4.4)                  | As required for the application |
| 900 mm (35.4 in.) Straight rail kit | 2198T-BE-ST09          | <ul> <li>900 mm (35.4 in.) long:</li> <li>2 straight rectangular rails</li> <li>2 straight rectangular wedges</li> <li>2 straight flat rails</li> <li>2 straight flat wedges</li> <li>26 M4 x 8 mm Torx screws</li> <li>30 M4 x 20 mm Torx screws</li> </ul> | 3.0 (6.6)                  | As required for the application |

### Table 10 - iTRAK 5730 System Components

### Table 10 - iTRAK 5730 System Components (Continued)

| Kit Description  | Catalog Number | Kit Contents   | Weight<br>[kg (lb)] | Quantity Required   |
|--|----------------|--|---------------------|---|
| Curved rail kit  | 2198T-BE-ED18  | <ul> <li>900 mm (35.4 in.) long x 35 mm (1.4 in.) diameter:</li> <li>2 curved rectangular rails</li> <li>2 curved rectangular wedges</li> <li>2 curved left, flat rails</li> <li>2 curved right, flat rails</li> <li>2 curved flat wedges</li> <li>4 lubrication system 0-rings</li> <li>20 M4 x 8 mm Torx screws</li> <li>28 M4 x 20 mm Torx screws</li> </ul>  | 2.9 (6.4)           | One per curved motor section  |
| Mover  | 2198T-VT0304-E | Fully assembled mover with motor magnet  | 0.7 (1.5)           | As required for the application   |
| Position magnet (south polarity)                       | 2198T-N1-0304  | Mover position sensor magnet   | 0.02 (0.04)         | One per system, when a reference<br>mover is specified. See step 4 of<br><u>Continue iTRAK 5730 Motor Module</u><br><u>Configuration</u> on page <u>99</u> for more<br>information. |
| Position magnet (north polarity)                       | 2198T-NN-0304  | Mover position sensor magnet   | 0.02 (0.04)         | As required for the application, or<br>one less than the total number of<br>movers, when the position magnet<br>cat. no. 2198T-N1-0304 is used.                                     |
| Structural mounting ring kit (top)                     | 2198T-AS-01    | 1 stainless-steel ring<br>10 M6 x 20 mm, hex head reamer screws<br>1 tube of Loctite 243   | 1.4 (3.0)           | One top and one bottom mounting<br>ring for every two straight motor<br>modules in the system (includes   |
| Structural mounting ring kit (bottom)                  | 2198T-AS-02    | 1 stainless-steel ring<br>10 M6 x 20 mm, hex head reamer screws<br>1 tube of Loctite 243   | 1.8 (4.0)           | the connection to a first curved<br>motor module). And, one top and<br>one bottom mounting ring for a<br>second curved motor module.  |
| Power and control input connector module               | 2198T-CT-CP    | Connector module with power and Ethernet<br>connection ports   | 0.8 (1.6)           | One per system  |
| Power input with control pass-through connector module | 2198T-CT-P     | Connector module with power connection port  | 0.7 (1.5)           | As required for the application   |
| Power and control pass-through<br>connector module     | 2198T-CT       | Connector module (pass-through only, no ports)   | 0.3 (0.7)           | Enough to connect all motor<br>sections   |
| Lubrication system                                     | 2198T-AL-SYS-4 | <ul> <li>4 digitally activated pumps</li> <li>4 pump mounting brackets</li> <li>4 250 cc lubricant cartridges</li> <li>4 nickel-plated tube fittings</li> <li>4 fitting reducers, 1/4 x 1/8 in. FNPT</li> <li>4 90° elbow fittings, 1/4 in. MNPT</li> <li>4 straight nipple fittings, 1/4 in. NPT</li> <li>4 4 mm fittings, PTC, 1/8 in. MNPT</li> <li>4 4 mm fitting plugs</li> <li>4 check valves, 1/8 in. MNPT x 1/8 in. FNPT</li> <li>6 0-rings</li> <li>25 m (82 ft) 4 x 2.5 mm polymer tubing</li> </ul> | 6.7 (14.8)          | One per system  |

# Inspection

When you receive your iTRAK 5730 kits and components, inspect each kit for damage or missing items. If there is evidence of damage or loss, follow this procedure:

- Note on the delivery receipt that the equipment being received is damaged or parts are missing.
- Contact the carrier that made the delivery and schedule an inspection.
- Inform your local Rockwell Automation representative that the equipment is damaged or parts are missing.
- Retain all product packaging for review by the carrier.

Complete this additional inspection for all complete rail kits:

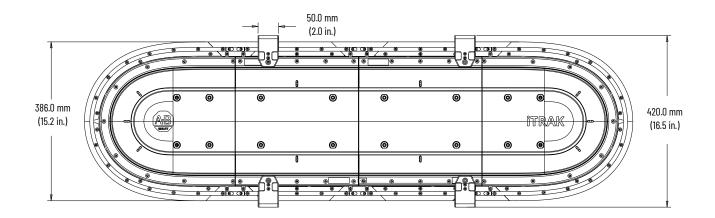
• Inspect and verify that there is no damage to the surfaces of the rectangular and flat rail components. Do not use a damaged rail component.

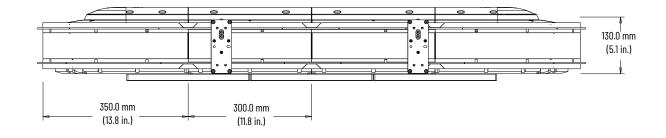
For further assistance, contact your Rockwell Automation representative.

# **Approximate Dimensions**

<u>Figure 19</u> provides the approximate dimensions of an assembled iTRAK 5730 system that includes two curved and two straight motor modules. Four movers shown for illustrative purposes.

### Figure 19 - Assembled iTRAK 5730 Approximate Dimensions





# Assemble an iTRAK 5730 System

This section provides instructions to assemble an iTRAK 5730 system. This installation provides instructions for assembling a closed track iTRAK 5730 system, with a minimum of two curved and two straight motor modules. Your track can be made with more straight motor modules than are shown in these procedures, but the same instructions apply. If fewer curved or straight motor sections are desired, contact Rockwell Automation for details.

For this installation configuration, there are six main tasks to assembling your iTRAK 5730 system. For important information on lifting and mounting iTRAK 5730 assemblies, see <u>Before You Begin</u> on page <u>44</u> before you begin the assembly tasks.

| Task   | Page |
|--|------|
| Install Top Structural Mounting Rings                  | 45   |
| Install Bottom Structural Mounting Rings               | 48   |
| Install Bottom Flat Rails and Flat Wedges              | 49   |
| Install Bottom Rectangular Rails                       | 52   |
| Install Rectangular Wedges and Align Rectangular Rails | 54   |
| Install Top Rails, Wedges, and Connector Modules       | 56   |

### **Before You Begin**

The iTRAK 5730 system requires installation of structural mounting rings and track rail assemblies on both surfaces of the motor modules. During assembly you are required to lift the partially assembled system and place the opposite side up to complete the installation of components. This procedure requires lifting equipment and hardware capable of supporting the full assembled weight of the product. To prepare the appropriately rated lifting equipment, you must calculate the full assembled weight of your iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Table 10</u> on page <u>41</u> for iTRAK 5730 components and kits weights.



**ATTENTION:** To avoid possible injury or equipment damage, follow local, national, and international codes, standards, regulations, or industry guidelines and your company safety procedures when you handle or lift a partially or fully assembled iTRAK 5730 system.

Each structural mounting ring contains eight holes that accept M6 x 16 mm hardware. The mounting ring holes can be used to secure the appropriate hardware to lift the assembly. The hole locations are identified in Figure 20 and Figure 21. The holes that are used for lifting are also used for mounting hardware installation.

Use a minimum of four mounting-ring lifting holes for every 2...6 straight motor module sections. Use a minimum of six mounting-ring lifting holes for every 8...12 straight motor module sections. Similarly, install the lifting hardware to one side of the rings only to lift and flip the partially or fully assembled system.

### Figure 20 - Top Structural; Mounting Ring Lifting and Mounting Holes

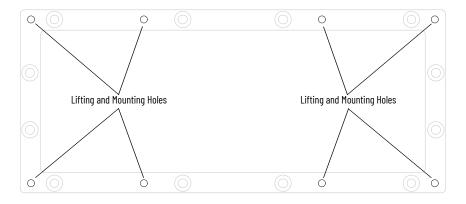
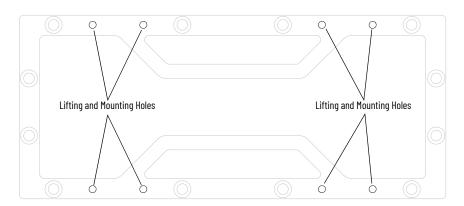


Figure 21 - Bottom Structural Mounting Ring Lifting and Mounting Holes

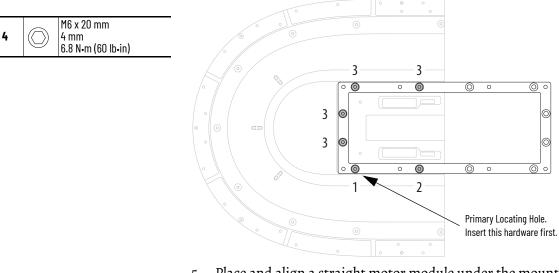


### **Install Top Structural Mounting Rings**

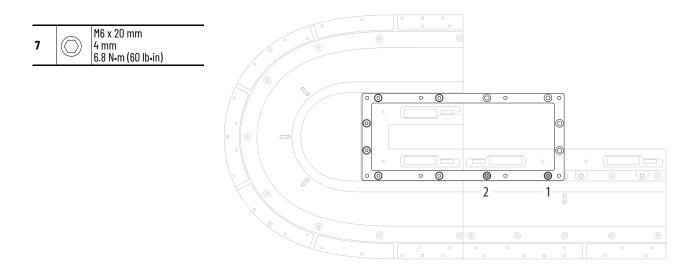
- 1. With the upper surface facing up (side with status indicators), place a curved motor module on a flat and level work surface.
- 2. With the counter-bored holes visible (up), place a structural mounting ring into the inner motor module surface.

**IMPORTANT** Apply Loctite 243 on the mounting-ring hardware thread area and food-grade lubricant on the shoulder area to reduce the risk of binding in rings.

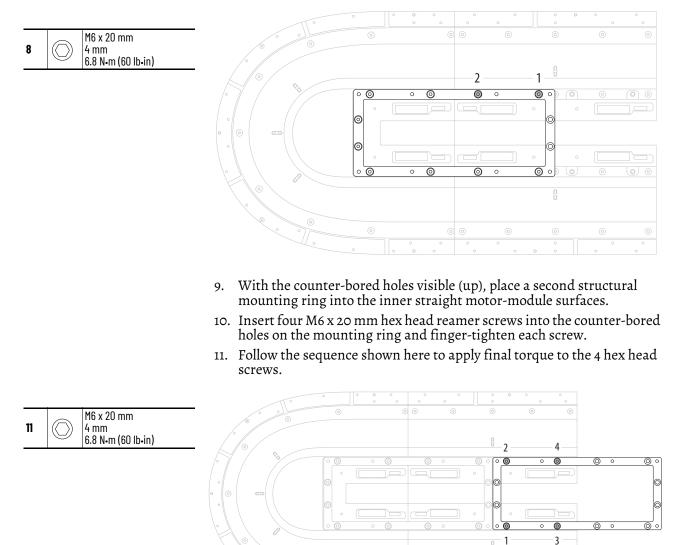
- 3. Insert six M6 x 20 mm hex head reamer screws into the counter-bored holes on the mounting ring and finger-tighten each screw using the torque pattern that is shown in <u>step 4</u>.
- 4. Follow the sequence shown here to apply final torque to the 6 hex head screws.



- 5. Place and align a straight motor module under the mounting ring next to the curved motor module.
- 6. Insert two M6 x 20 mm hex head reamer screws into the counter-bored holes on the mounting ring and finger-tighten each screw.
- 7. Follow the sequence shown here to apply final torque to the 2 hex head screws.



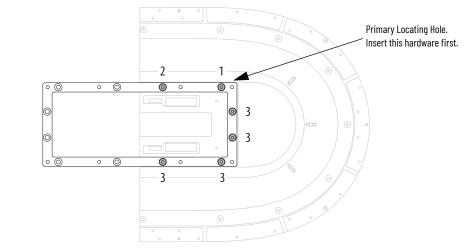
8. Repeat steps <u>5...7</u> to install a second straight motor module across from the first straight motor module.



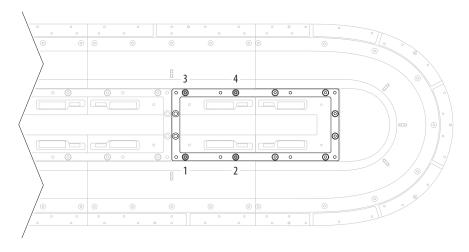
- 12. If additional straight motor modules are used, repeat steps <u>5...8</u> to install each module.

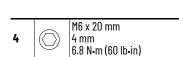
Install Closing Curved Motor Module

- 1. With the upper surface facing up (side with status indicators), place a second curved motor module on a flat and level work surface.
- 2. With the counter-bored holes visible (up), place a structural mounting ring into the inner curved motor module surface.
- 3. Insert six M6 x 20 mm hex head reamer screws into the counter-bored holes on the mounting ring and finger-tighten each screw.
- 4. Follow the sequence shown here to apply final torque to the 6 hex head screws.



- 5. Place and align the second curved motor module with mounting ring next to the last pair of straight motor modules.
- 6. Insert four M6 x 20 mm hex head reamer screws into the open counterbored holes on the mounting ring and finger-tighten each screw.
- 7. Follow the sequence shown here to apply final torque to the 4 hex head screws.





M6 x 20 mm

4 mm 6.8 N•m (60 lb•in)

7

# Install Bottom Structural Mounting Rings

|  | IMPORTANT          | The top and bottom structural mounting rings are separate and have different part numbers. Confirm you are installing the correct mounting ring.  |
|--|--------------------|---|
|  |                    | and secure M6 x 16 mm rotary eyebolts into the appropriate<br>n the structural mounting rings.  |
|  | 2. Secure          | the assembly in multiple locations along its length with the priately rated lifting equipment.  |
|  |                    | <b>TTENTION:</b> To guard against possible personal injury and equipment damage, take<br>uese precautions when lifting the iTRAK 5730 assembly:<br>Inspect all lifting hardware for proper attachment before lifting the equipment.<br>Do not allow any part of the equipment or lifting mechanism to contact electrically<br>charged conductors or components.<br>There is a risk of injury by improper handling. You can be injured by being crushed,<br>cut, struck, or sheared while handling system components.<br>Do not allow personnel or their limbs directly underneath the equipment when it is<br>being lifted and mounted. |
|  |                    | lift the assembly off the work surface to a level high enough to the assembly only.   |
|  |                    | x4 supports flat on the work surface to allow for the assembly to the installed structural mounting brackets.   |
|  | 5. Slowly          | rotate the assembly and lower it onto the 2x4 supports.   |
|  | IMPOI              | <b>RTANT</b> Apply Loctite 243 on the mounting-ring hardware thread area and food-grade lubricant on the shoulder area to reduce the risk of binding in rings.  |
|  | 6. With th ring at | he counter-bored holes visible (up), place a structural mounting<br>each mounting location on the bottom of the motor modules.  |
|  |                    | an M6 x 20 mm hex head reamer screw into each of the open<br>r-bored holes on the mounting rings and finger-tighten each  |
|  |                    | t one end of the assembly and work to the opposite end to apply oque to all screws.   |
| M6 x 20 mm<br>4 mm<br>6.8 N-m (60 lb-in) |                    |   |
|  |                    |   |
|  | 3 4<br>© © °       |   |
| 11 • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •   | © © °<br>13 14     | 20<br>0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0   |
|  |                    |   |

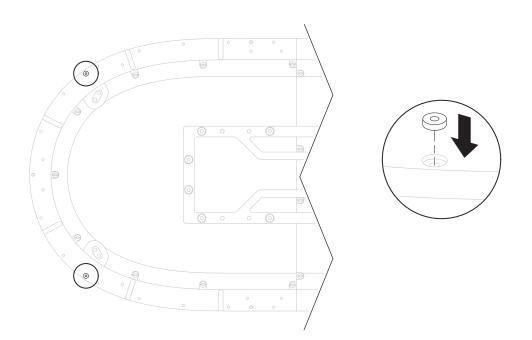
8

0

9. Place a rubber O-ring in each of the two lubrication system openings on each of the curved motor modules.



A drop of oil can help to keep the rubber O-ring in place.



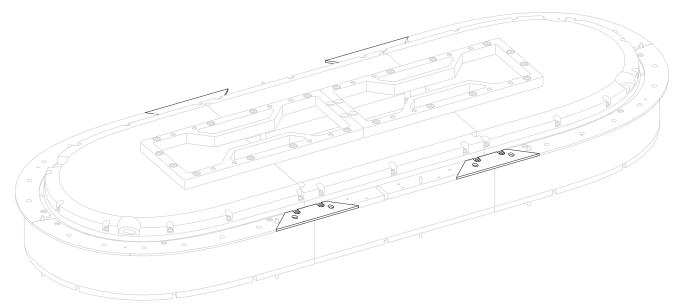
### **Install Bottom Flat Rails and Flat Wedges**

- 1. Remove the protective end-caps from the rail components.
- 2. By using a lint free cloth and isopropyl alcohol, clean the surfaces of the rectangular and flat rails in the straight and curved rail kits.
- 3. With the counter-bored holes visible (up), place the curved flat rails on the surface of the curved motor modules and align the mounting holes.

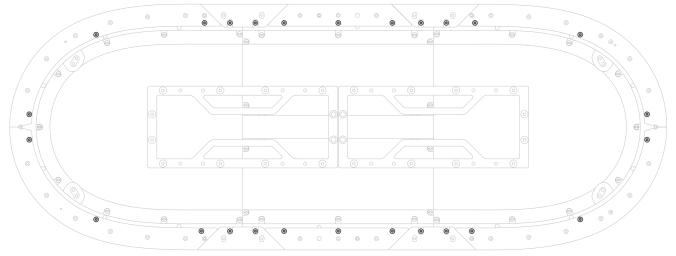


The motor modules contain pins along the surface that help to align the rails properly.

4. With the counter-bored holes visible (up), place a straight flat-rail wedge at the ends of each curved flat rail section.



- 5. With the counter-bored holes visible (up), place the straight flat rail components on the motor modules.
- 6. Insert and finger-tighten an M4 x 8 mm Torx screw in each of the counter-board holes on the flat rail sections.

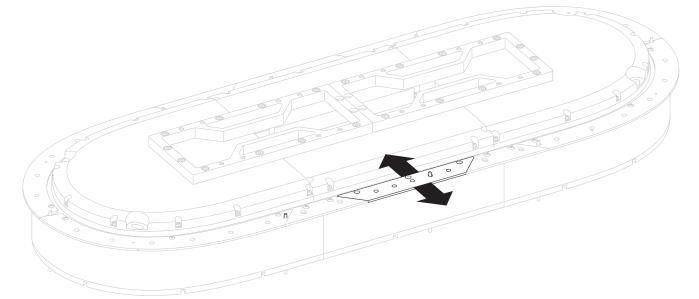


- 7. By using a T20 driver, tighten each of the M4 x 8 mm Torx screws until fully seated against the rail (do <u>not</u> apply final torque).
- 8. Loosen each of the M4 x 8 mm Torx screws one-half turn.



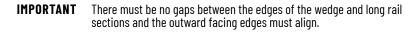
The screw heads must remain in the counter-bore just below the surface of the flat rails. The screws must be loose enough to allow for rail alignment adjustments.

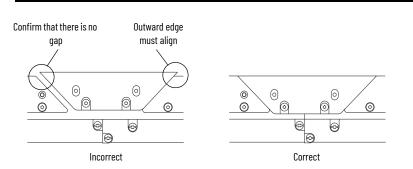
9. Begin with a long, straight flat-rail section next to a curve and move the rail inward or outward until it stops against the screw head.



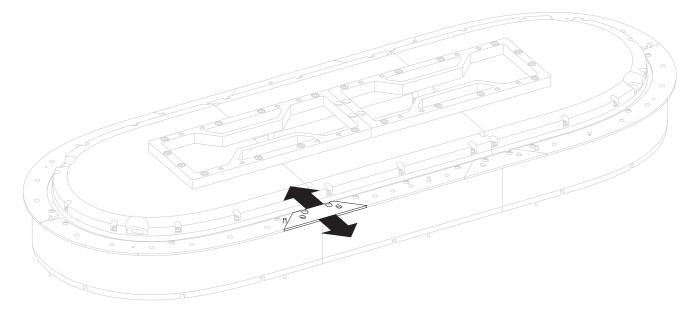
- 10. While holding the rail in place, hand-tighten the M4 x 8 mm Torx screws (do <u>not</u> apply final torque).
- 11. Position the long, straight flat-rail section across from the rail you positioned in step <u>9</u>. Move the rail section in the same direction (inward or outward) as you did with the previous rail section.
- 12. While holding the rail in place, hand-tighten the M4 x 8 mm Torx screws (do <u>not</u> apply final torque).

13. On the same end of the rail system, align a flat rail wedge with the straight and curved rail sections on either side of the wedge.



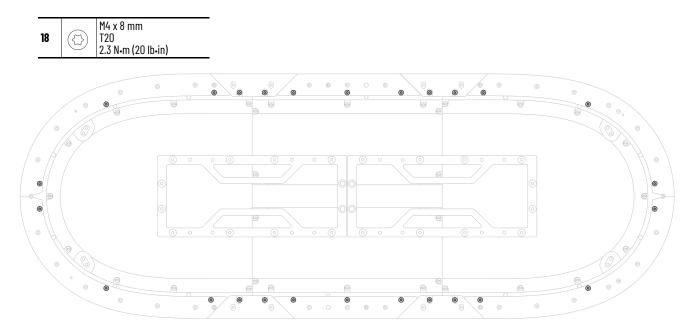


14. While holding the wedge rail in place, aligning the wedge with the curved flat rail and straight flat rail, hand-tighten the M4 x 8 mm Torx screws (do <u>not</u> apply final torque).



- 15. While holding the curved flat rail section in place, hand-tighten the M4 x 8 mm Torx screws (do <u>not</u> apply final torque).
- 16. Continue around the rail system, and repeat steps <u>11...15</u> for the remaining straight flat-rail, flat wedges, and curved flat-rail sections.
- 17. Check the entire rail system for gaps and/or misalignment and loosen any screws as necessary to align the rail system properly.

18. When all flat rails are in alignment, apply final torque to all screws.

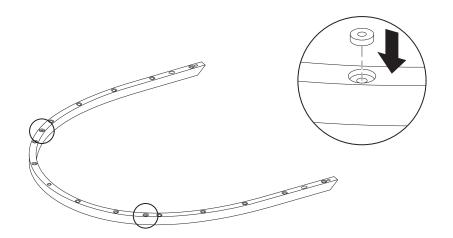


### **Install Bottom Rectangular Rails**

1. Place and seat a rubber O-ring in each of the two lubrication system openings on a curved rectangular-rail section.



A drop of oil can help to keep the rubber O-ring in place.

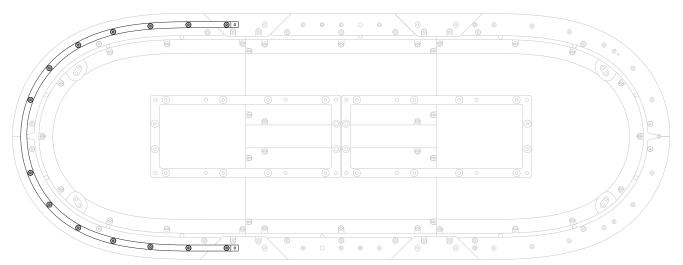


2. With the counter-bored holes visible (up), place a curved rectangular rail on the curved flat rail until it is fully seated against the flat rail below.



The motor modules contain pins along the surface that are used to locate the rails properly.

3. Insert 14 M4 x 20 mm Torx head screws into the counter-bored holes on the rail and finger-tighten the screws.

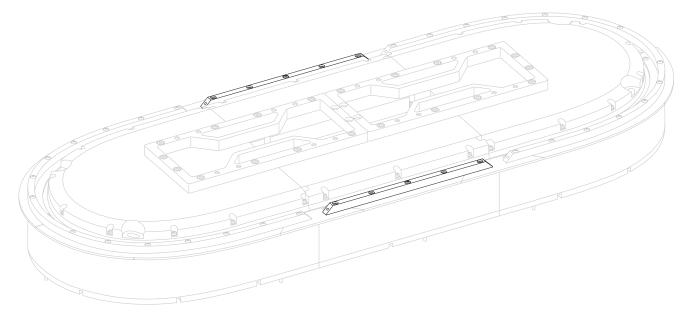


- 4. Repeat steps <u>1...3</u> for the second curved rectangular-rail section.
- 5. With the counter-bored holes visible (up), place a straight rectangular rail on a straight flat rail until it is fully seated against the flat rail.



The motor modules contain pins along the surface that are used to locate the rails properly.

- 6. Insert an M4 x 20 mm Torx head screw into the center counter-bored hole on the rail and tighten the screw until it is fully seated against the rail (do <u>not</u> apply final torque).
- 7. Loosen the screw one turn.
- 8. Repeat steps <u>5</u>...<u>7</u> for each straight rectangular rail.

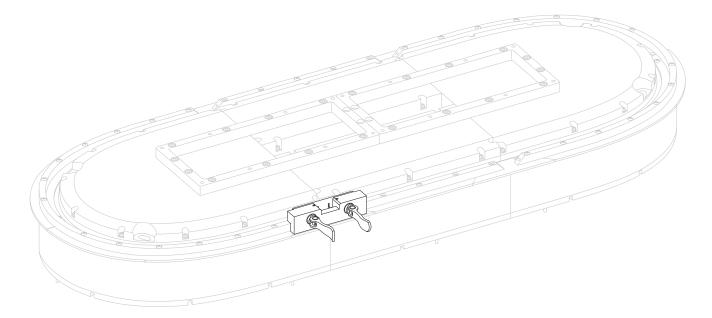


# IMPORTANT Start with the two wedges on each end of the curved sections first. Begin with the gap between a curved and straight rail section, and, with the counter-bored holes visible (up), place a rectangular wedge in the gap between the rectangular rails. Insert an M4 x 8 mm Torx head screw into the counter-bored holes on the wedge and finger-tighten the screws.

3. With the tool clamps unlocked, place the rail alignment tool (cat. no. 2198T-A08) over the center of the wedge.

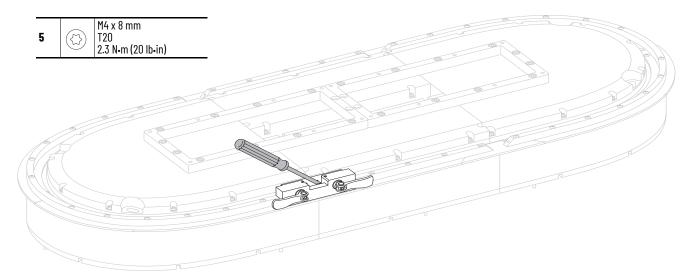


Verify that you can access each of the screws in the wedge with the driver bit, without interference from the alignment tool.

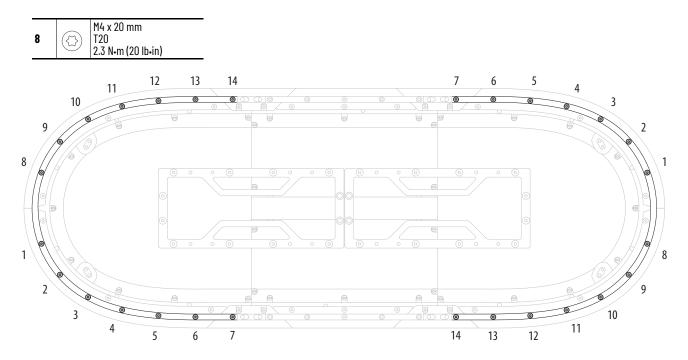


# Install Rectangular Wedges and Align Rectangular Rails

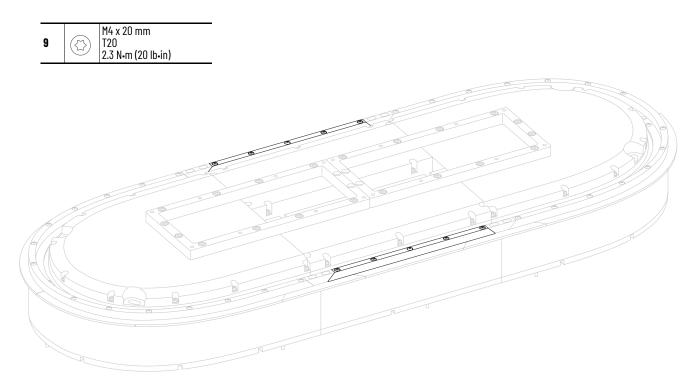
- 4. While you press downward on the rail alignment tool to verify that the tool is in full contact with the rails, lock the tool clamps.
- 5. Apply final torque to screws in the wedge.



- 6. For the remaining wedges that are placed between a curved and straight rail section, repeat steps <u>1...5</u>.
- 7. For the remaining wedges that are placed between straight rectangular-rail sections, repeat steps <u>1</u>...<u>5</u>.
- 8. Follow the sequence shown here to apply final torque to the 14 Torx head screws for both curved sections.



9. Insert M4 x 20 mm Torx head screws into the remaining counter-bored holes on the straight rectangular rails and apply final torque to all screws.



### Install Top Rails, Wedges, and Connector Modules

- 1. Install and secure M6 x 16 mm rotary eyebolts into the available holes on the structural mounting rings.
- 2. Secure the assembly in multiple locations along its length with the appropriately rated lifting equipment.



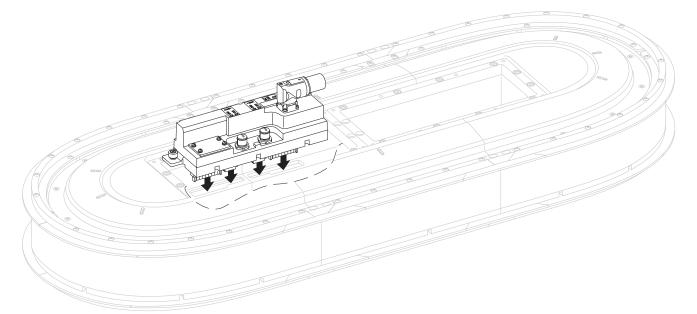
**ATTENTION:** To guard against possible personal injury and equipment damage, take these precautions when lifting the iTRAK 5730 assembly:

- Inspect all lifting hardware for proper attachment before lifting the equipment.
- Do not allow any part of the equipment or lifting mechanism to contact electrically charged conductors or components.
- Do not allow personnel or their limbs directly underneath the equipment when it is being lifted and mounted.
- 3. Slowly lift the assembly off the work surface to a level high enough to rotate the assembly only.
- 4. Remove the 2x4 supports from the work surface.
- 5. Slowly rotate the assembly and lower it onto the work surface.
- 6. To install the rail system on the top side of the system, repeat the steps as outlined in <u>Install Bottom Flat Rails and Flat Wedges on page 49</u>, <u>Install Bottom Rectangular Rails on page 52</u>, and <u>Install Rectangular Wedges and Align Rectangular Rails on page 54</u>.

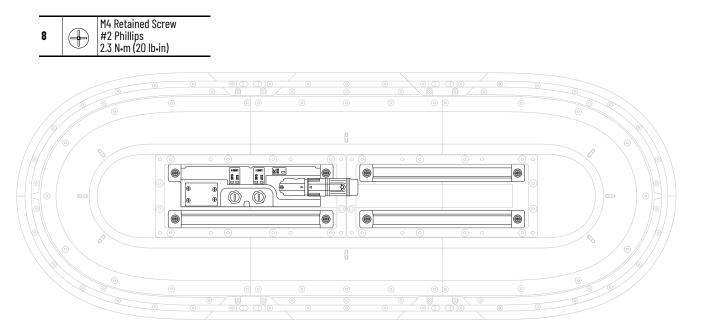


You can choose to install the connector modules before or after you have completed mounting the iTRAK 5730 assembly.

7. Align the connectors on the connector module with the connectors in the motor module and press it into place until firmly seated.



- 8. Apply final torque to the two captive Phillips head screws on the module.
- 9. Repeat steps  $\underline{7...8}$  for the remaining connector modules.



You have completed the iTRAK 5730 assembly. Next steps:

- Mount the iTRAK 5730 assembly see page <u>58</u>
- Install the lubrication system see page <u>63</u>
- Install the position magnets on the movers see page 139
- Install the movers see page <u>140</u>
- Connect power and control cables see page <u>74</u> and <u>78</u>

# Mount the iTRAK 5730 Assembly

Use the information in this section to prepare the iTRAK 5730 system for lifting and mounting. A customer-sourced mounting structure is required to mount the iTRAK 5730 in the desired position and location.

Choose the location for system components following these considerations:

- operator and maintenance access to movers and motor modules
- cable lengths
- vibration free surfaces

The iTRAK 5730 includes two structural mounting rings, the top mounting ring and the bottom mounting ring. Each mounting ring contains eight threaded mounting holes that accept M6 x 16 mm hardware. To connect the iTRAK 5730 to the customer-sourced mounting structure, attach one of the mounting rings to the structure using all eight mounting holes in the ring.

In high shock and vibration applications, it is especially important to use all eight mounting holes of a mounting ring. For these applications, you may consider attaching the other mounting ring to a mounting structure as well, if the application permits.

To allow the motor modules and rings to undergo maintenance without disassembly of the mounting structure, we recommend that the customersourced mounting system meet the following conditions:

- Allows access to the eight mounting holes in both the top and bottom mounting rings.
- Allows access to the 12 counter-bored holes in both the top and bottom mounting rings.

The mounting hole and counter-bored hole locations are shown in <u>Figure 22</u> on page 59.

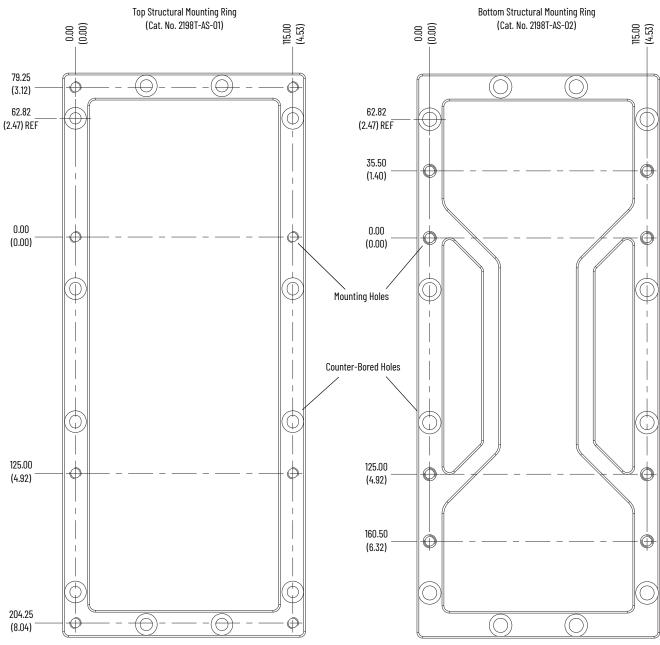
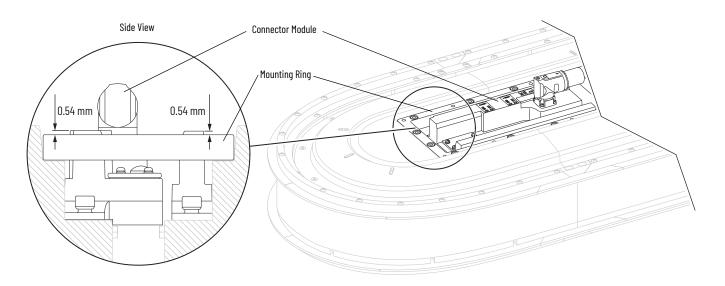


Figure 22 - Structural Ring Mounting Hole Pattern

Dimensions are in millimeters and (inches).



**ATTENTION:** Installed connector modules extend approximately 0.54 mm (0.02 in.) above the surface of the top structural mounting rings. You must use a 1 mm (0.04 in.) or larger spacer between the top structural mounting rings and a mounting plate or similar mounting assembly when secured at a 90° angle to the connector modules. Failure to follow these instructions can result in equipment damage.



### **Grounding Requirements**

To reduce the effects of electromagnetic interference (EMI), the iTRAK 5730 system must be mounted such that the mounting rings are bonded to earth ground.

If the mounting interface does not provide a low impedance path to earth ground, it is recommended that you connect the mounting rings to ground with a braided ground strap. Keep the braided ground strap as short as possible for optimum bonding. For large systems with multiple power input connector modules, it is recommended that these braided ground straps be connected to the mounting rings nearest to each power input connector module.

### Before You Lift and Mount the iTRAK 5730 Assembly

Follow these guidelines to avoid personal injury or equipment damage.



**ATTENTION:** There is a risk of injury by improper handling. You can be injured by being crushed, cut, struck, or sheared while handling system components.

- Only qualified persons must work with components of the system or within their proximity.
- Observe the relevant statutory regulations of accident prevention.
- Use protective equipment such as hard hat, safety goggles, safety shoes, and safety gloves while handling the system.
- Proper transport, storage, mounting and installation, and care in operation and maintenance are prerequisites for optimal and safe operation of the system.
  - Use suitable equipment for mounting and transport.
  - Use proper tools and use special tools if specified.
  - Use hoist equipment and tools in the correct manner.
  - Avoid jamming and crushing by using safety measures.
  - Do not stand under loads.
- Use the components of the system only in the manner that is defined as appropriate. See <u>Appropriate Use on page 10</u>.
- Follow the safety regulations and requirements of the country in which the system is operated.
- Only operate if the national Electromagnetic Compatibility (EMC) regulations for the application are met.
- In accordance with EMC requirements, the machine or installation manufacturer is responsible for compliance with the limit values as prescribed in the national or local regulations.

### Lift the iTRAK 5730 Assembly

To prepare the appropriately rated lifting equipment, you must calculate the full assembled weight of your iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Table 10 on page 41</u> for iTRAK 5730 components and kits weights.

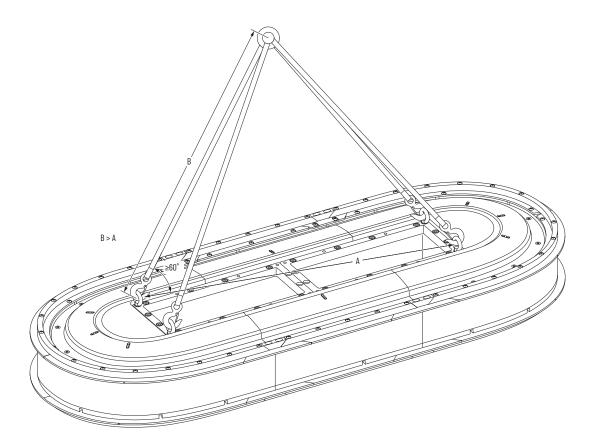


**ATTENTION:** To avoid possible injury or equipment damage, follow local, national, and international codes, standards, regulations, or industry guidelines and your company safety procedures when you handle or lift a partially or fully assembled iTRAK 5730 system. Do not lift or move the equipment by any means other than what is described in this publication.

The structural mounting rings (cat. no. 2198T-AS-01 and 2198T-AS-02) contain eight holes that can be used to secure the appropriate M6 x 16 mm hardware that is used to lift the assembly. The holes that are used for lifting hardware during installation are shown in <u>Figure 20 on page 44</u> and <u>Figure 21 on page 44</u>.

Use a minimum of four lifting holes in the mounting rings for every 2...6 straight motor module sections. Use a minimum of six lifting holes for every 8...12 straight motor module sections. Similarly, install the lifting hardware to one side of the rings only to lift and flip the partially or fully assembled system.

### Figure 23 - Lift the iTRAK System



# Install the Lubrication System

### **Contents of an iTRAK Lubrication System**

The iTRAK 5730 Lubrication System, kit catalog number 2198T-AL-SYS-4, contains the following components.

### Lubricant Pumps

Four lubricant pumps are included, one for each bearing rail, the top flat rail, bottom flat rail, top rectangular rail, and bottom rectangular rail. The assembled pumps have push-to-connect connectors with plugs. These plugs help prevent oil from leaking during shipment. You remove these plugs when you are ready to connect the tubes. The pump fittings contain a check valve to help prevent backflow when a replacement reservoir is installed.

### Lubricant Tubes

Four 10 m (32.8 ft) long lubricant tubes are included in the kit to connect fittings on the remotely located pumps to fittings on the iTRAK.

### iTRAK Fittings for Lubricant Tube Connections

Four in-line one-touch fittings (item 13 in Figure 24 on page 64) are provided. These fittings are used to connect the lubricant tubes to the iTRAK. The fittings screw onto the track bottom end plate at one or both ends of the track. The Curve Motors at the ends of the track are the only motors with lubricant bleed holes, and therefore the lubrication kits must connect to the ends of the track. Once the fittings are installed, connect the fittings to the pumps with the provided tubing.

### Straight Fittings to Customize the Direction of Tubing

The lubrication system is assembled with right angle fittings by default. Additional straight hex nipple fittings are provided to let you redirect pump tubing. If your system requires straight exit from the pump, use the supplied straight fittings to replace the right angle fittings. Use Teflon tape for the tapered NPT threads.

### Lubricant Pump Reservoir Sealing Washer

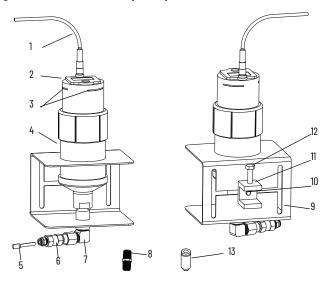
The reservoir uses a straight 1/4 BSPP thread. A sealing washer is supplied.

### **Required Quantity of iTRAK Lubrication Systems**

The number of iTRAK Lubrication System per track may vary according to the length of the track. The general rule is as follows:

- Tracks with up to 4800 mm (188.98 in.) of straight length (16 straight motors): use one lubrication kit 2198T-AL-SYS-4.
- Tracks with more than 4800 mm (188.98 in.) of straight length (>16 straight motors): use two lubrication kits, one kit connected to one end of the track, the other kit connected to the other end of the track.

### Figure 24 - Lubricant Pump Components



| ltem | Description                        | Item | Description                           |
|------|------------------------------------|------|---------------------------------------|
| 1    | 5 m (16.4 ft) Digital signal cable | 8    | Straight brass fitting <sup>(1)</sup> |
| 2    | Digitally activated pump           | 9    | Mounting bracket                      |
| 3    | Pump status indicators             | 10   | 0.2520 x 0.5 screw                    |
| 4    | Lubricant cartridge                | 11   | Beam clamp                            |
| 5    | Plug                               | 12   | 0.2520 x 1.25 screw                   |
| 6    | Check valve                        | 13   | One-touch fitting M5                  |
| 7    | Brass elbow fitting                |      |                                       |

 If your installation requires the tubing to exit the pumps vertically, you can replace the brass elbows with the two straight brass nipples that are supplied with the kit.

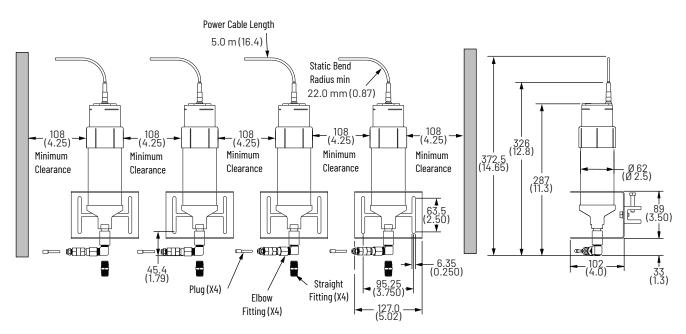
### **Tools Required to Install Lubricant Pumps**

- 7/16 in. open-end wrench
- M2.5 hex key

### Mount the Lubricant Pumps and Connect Lubricant Tubes

To mount the lubricant pumps, complete these steps.

- 1. Choose a mounting position for each pump. Each pump must be located with the following constraints:
  - The mounting position must have a suitable mounting surface that allows the pump to be secured using its beam clamp (item 11 in <u>Figure 24</u>). The beam clamp can be positioned anywhere on the H pattern of the mounting bracket.
  - Each pump comes with 10 m (32.8 ft) of lubricant tube to connect the pump to the iTRAK 5730 system lubrication connectors, limiting the distance that the pump can be from the iTRAK 5730.
  - Power cable routing distance: Each pump comes with a 5.0 m (16.4 ft) power cable to connect it to the 24V I/O port of your controller.
  - Maintenance and monitoring: The location must be accessible for maintenance and visible for monitoring the pump status indicators.
  - Mounting clearance: Observe the clearance requirements in Figure 25.



### Figure 25 - Lubricant Pump Mounting Dimensions and Clearances

- 2. Secure all pumps in their mounting locations. Use the following steps for each pump:
  - a. If necessary, adjust the position of the beam clamp within the H pattern of the mounting bracket to accommodate the attachment surface; use a 7/16 in. open-end wrench.
  - b. Secure the lubricant pump to its mounting surface (such as a beam) using the beam clamp; use a 7/16 in. open-end wrench to tighten the clamp.
- 3. Without connecting the lubricant tubes, label, route, and secure the lubricant tubes that will later be used to connect the pumps to the lubrication connectors on the iTRAK 5730 system.



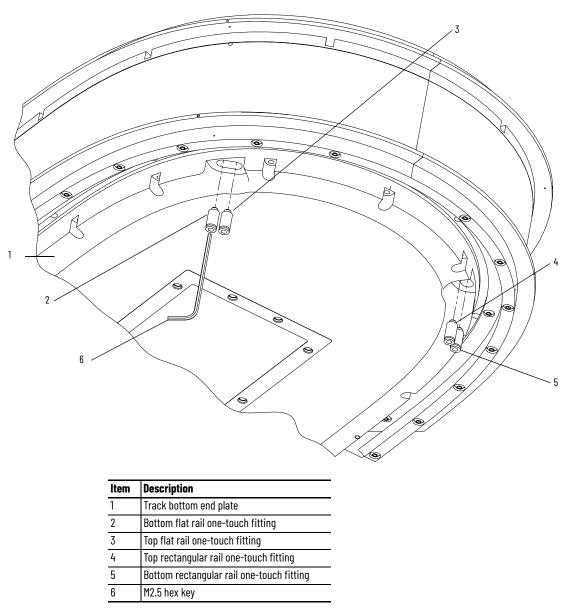
**ATTENTION:** For the following step, if you do not connect the lubricant tubes to the lubricant pump connector soon after removing the plug from the lubricant pump connector, oil may leak out of the lubricant pump and cause a slipping hazard.

- 4. For each lubricant pump, perform the following steps a and b in immediate succession. Do not wait between the two steps.
  - a. To remove the plug (item 5 in <u>Figure 24</u>) from the lubricant pump connector, simultaneously pull back on the connector face and pull out the plug.
  - b. Connect the lubricant tube to the lubricant pump connector.

### Make Lubricant Tube Connections to the iTRAK

1. Screw all lubrication-connector-in-line-one-touch fittings into place in the track bottom end plate on either end or both ends of the track, applying Loctite thread locker to the fitting threads if this is a high vibration application. Some example fittings are shown as items 2...5 in Figure 26.

Figure 26 - Installing the Lubrication-connector-in-line-one-touch Fittings on the Bottom of the iTRAK 5730 System



2. Select a lubricant tube that has already been routed and connected to a lubricant pump. Connect this lubricant tube to a lubrication-connector-in-line-one-touch fitting. This connection forms a continuous path for the lubricant from the pump to the rail lubricant bleed holes. Repeat this step for all fittings.

### Fill the Lubricant Pump Reservoirs with Lubricant

The recommended lubricant to fill the reservoirs or cartridges is the standard H1 food safe oil: Kluber 4-UH1-68N.

### **Wire the Lubricant Pumps**

Make the following connections.



After wiring the lubricant pumps, an initial coating of oil is required on the entire track before operating the iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Lubrication on</u> page 166.

### **Configure the Lubrication System**

See Lubrication on page 166.

# **Optional Infield Covers**

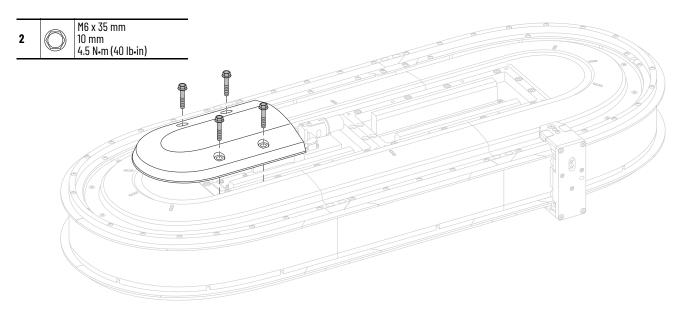
The iTRAK 5730 system has optional infield section covers that provide additional ingress protection.

What You Need

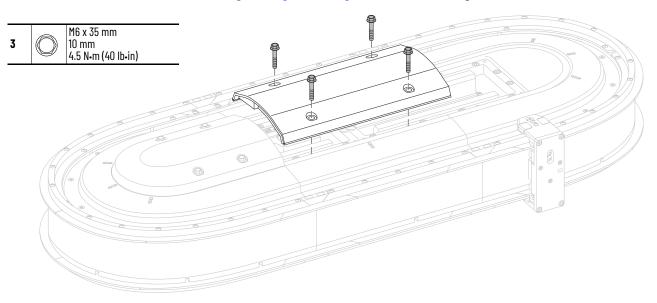
- 10 mm hexagonal socket
- Loctite 243
- Infield Cover Kit

To install infield covers, complete these steps.

- 1. Apply Loctite 243 to the M6 x 35 hex head bolts.
- 2. Secure the curved infield cover to the assembly.



3. Repeat <u>step 1</u> and <u>step 2</u> for the remaining covers.



# **Connect the iTRAK 5730 System**

This chapter provides information on how to connect your iTRAK<sup>®</sup> 5730 system components, make cable connections, and set your system IP addresses.

| Торіс   | Page |
|---|------|
| Typical iTRAK 5730 System                               | 70   |
| Provide Power to the iTRAK System                       | 71   |
| Connect an EtherNet/IP Network to the iTRAK 5730 System | 75   |

Use this chapter with the Kinetix<sup>®</sup> 5700 iTRAK Power Supply and iTRAK Bus Conditioner Module Installation Instructions, publication <u>2198T-IN001</u> to install and connect the Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply to an iTRAK 5730 system.

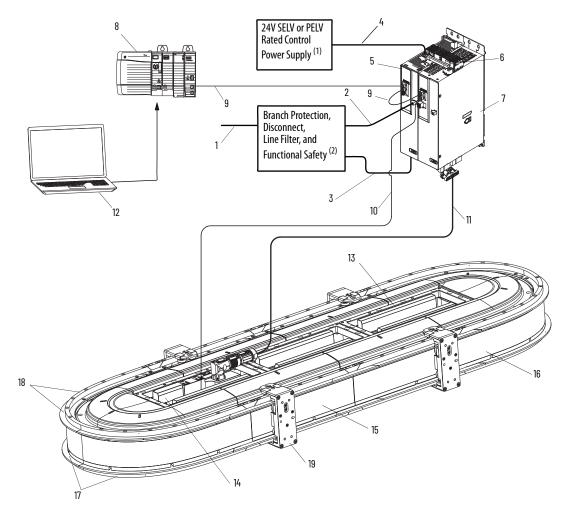
For detailed information on how to install a Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply into a Kinetix 5700 system, see the Kinetix 5700 Servo Drives User Manual, publication <u>2198-UM002</u>. The Kinetix 5700 Servo Drives User Manual publication contains the information that is needed for using the other components of the Kinetix 5700 system, including:

- 2198-Pxxx Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply
- Other Kinetix 5700 components that can be part of your Kinetix 5700 system
- Branch protection, disconnect, and line filter hardware
- Enclosure requirements
- Requirements for EMC and agency compliance
- Kinetix 5700 hardware mounting
- Bonding, wire routing, EMC considerations

# Typical iTRAK 5730 System

<u>Figure 27</u> provides a complete view of a typical iTRAK 5730 system that includes required and customer-supplied components, iTRAK solutions, and wiring.

### Figure 27 - Typical iTRAK System with an iTRAK Power Supply



- In this example, 24V DC control power uses a shared-bus connection system between the Kinetix 5700 power supply and the Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply.
- (2) See Kinetix 5700 Servo Drives User Manual, publication 2198-UM002, for more information on these components.

| ltem | Description   |
|------|---|
| 1    | Mains power (460V nom)  |
| 2    | Contactor enable signal line  |
| 3    | Kinetix 5700 line voltage   |
| 4    | 24V control power   |
| 5    | Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply  |
| 6    | DC busbar 100 mm (3.94 in.) link  |
| 7    | Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply (number of power supplies vary by system) |
| 8    | Programmable logic controller (PLC)                                       |
| 9    | Machine Ethernet  |
| 10   | Ethernet cable from the iTRAK power supply to connector module            |

| ltem | Description   |  |  |
|------|---|--|--|
| 11   | Power cable (DC-bus and 24V DC)   |  |  |
| 12   | Studio 5000 <sup>®</sup> Programming Interface (not supplied with system) |  |  |
| 13   | Power and control pass-through connector module                           |  |  |
| 14   | Power and control input connector module                                  |  |  |
| 15   | Straight motor module   |  |  |
| 16   | Curved motor module   |  |  |
| 17   | Bottom rectangular and flat rail systems                                  |  |  |
| 18   | Top rectangular and flat rail systems                                     |  |  |
| 19   | Mover   |  |  |

# Provide Power to the iTRAK System

Follow the guidance and instructions in this section to plan and complete the power connections between the iTRAK power supply and the iTRAK 5730 system. See the iTRAK 5730 System Technical Data, publication <u>2198T-TD002</u>, for detailed system power requirements.

You can use one iTRAK power supply to power up to 18 motor module sections, depending on current requirements and power cable length. You can use multiple iTRAK power supplies when your iTRAK system requires a higher current draw than can be supported by using one power supply. Use <u>Table 11</u> and <u>Table 12</u> to calculate your system current requirements.

### Table 11 - Current Draw for Motor Modules

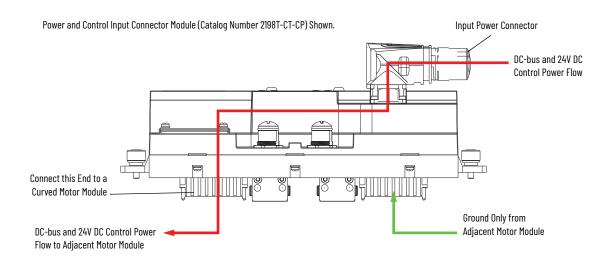
| Motor Module Type                          | Motor Sections per Module | Current Draw at 24V DC |
|--|---------------------------|------------------------|
| Straight (cat. no. 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2) | 1                         | 0.65 A                 |
| Curved (cat. no. 2198T-L20-T0309-D18-S2)   | 3                         | 1.6 A                  |

| Cable                     | Maximum Number of Motor Module Sections |                     |                         |  |
|---------------------------|---|---------------------|-------------------------|--|
| <b>Length</b><br>[m (ft)] | Low Line<br>(21.6V DC)                  | Nominal<br>(24V DC) | High Line<br>(26.4V DC) |  |
| 3 (9.8)                   |   |                     |                         |  |
| 6 (19.7)                  |   |                     |                         |  |
| 9 (29.5)                  | 18                                      | 18                  | 18                      |  |
| 12 (39.4)                 |   |                     |                         |  |
| 15 (49.2) <sup>(1)</sup>  |   |                     |                         |  |
| 30 (98.4) <sup>(1)</sup>  | 10                                      | 14                  |                         |  |

(1) Requires two iTRAK 5730 power supply power outputs and cables when 14 or more motor module sections are used.

### **Connect Power to the iTRAK 5730 System**

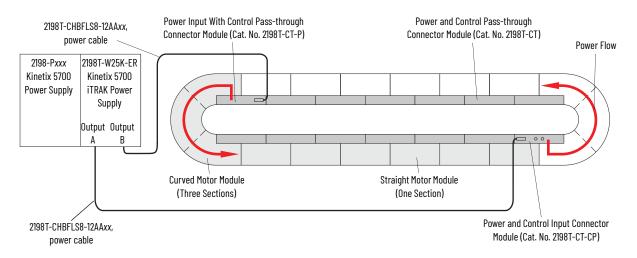
It is recommended that you install connector module catalog numbers 2198T-CT-CP and 2198T-CT-P, which connect DC-bus and 24V DC control power to the iTRAK 5730 system, on a curved motor module to provide maximum system power. Power, which is connected to the input power connector on the module, flows through the bottom output connector on the opposite end the module (as shown here). Connect the bottom output power connector to the input power connector on a curved motor module.



### **One iTRAK Power Supply**

<u>Figure 28</u> illustrates a typical system wiring diagram when using one iTRAK power supply. The power supply power output A is connected to a power and control input connector module. Power supply power output B is connected to power with a control pass-through connector. The power flow through the modules is shown in the diagram and identifies where the power connector modules are installed.

### Figure 28 - Wire an iTRAK 5730 System with an iTRAK Power Supply



## **Multiple iTRAK Power Supplies**

Follow these guidelines when using multiple iTRAK power supplies in an iTRAK system. A typical iTRAK 5730 system with two power supplies is shown in <u>Figure 29</u>.

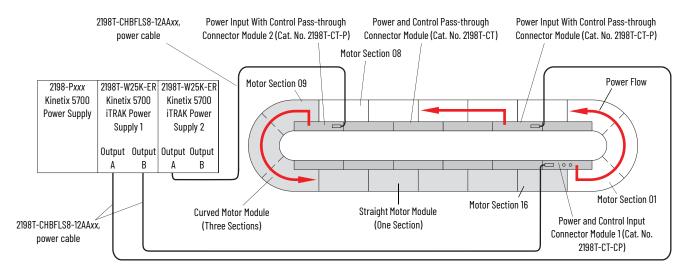
The iTRAK power supply is not designed to have the output buses of multiple power supplies connected together to create one bus of higher current capacity.



**ATTENTION:** To avoid personal injury and equipment damage, when multiple iTRAK power supplies are used, do not connect the DC output power bus on an iTRAK power supply to the DC output power bus on another iTRAK power supply.

When using multiple iTRAK power supplies, the system must be divided into separate electrical sections for each of the iTRAK power supplies. Use the following example to understand the use of multiple iTRAK power supplies for systems that require a higher current draw.

In this example, part of the track has a high-power demand, and the rest of the track has a lower power demand. In this case, iTRAK power supply 1 uses two power output connections (A, B) to provide power to the first eight motor sections (01...08). iTRAK power supply 2 uses one power output connection (A) to provide power to the remaining eight motor sections (09...16). The DC bus is electrically isolated between these two groups of motor modules. The power flow through the modules is shown in the diagram and identifies where the primary power connector modules are installed.



#### Figure 29 - Connecting Multiple iTRAK Power Supplies in a System

# **Connect the Power Cable**



**SHOCK HAZARD:** Do not make any cable connections when power is applied to any component in the iTRAK 5730 system. To avoid a shock hazard, verify that system power is not applied before you begin the procedures in this chapter.

Use an iTRAK 5730 power cable (cat. no. 2198T-CHBFLS8-12AAxx) to connect the output power from an iTRAK power supply to a power input connector module installed on the iTRAK 5730 system. Follow these steps to connect the power cable to a connector module.

- 1. Verify that power is disconnected from the iTRAK 5730 system.
- 2. Connect the iTRAK 5730 power cable to the iTRAK power supply. See the Kinetix<sup>®</sup> 5700 iTRAK Power Supply and iTRAK Bus Conditioner Module Installation Instructions, publication <u>2198T-IN001</u>, for instructions.
- 3. Remove the protective cap from the power input connector on the connector module.
- 4. Verify that the cable connector outer housing is in the unlocked position.
- 5. Align the arrow on the cable connector with the arrow on the power input connector on the connector module.
- 6. Insert the cable connector into the power input connector on the connector module until it is fully seated.
- 7. Rotate the cable connector outer housing to the locked position.

# Connect an EtherNet/IP Network to the iTRAK 5730 System

The iTRAK 5730 system is connected to an EtherNet/IP<sup>™</sup> network by using a Bulletin 1585D M12 Xcode Ethernet cable (catalog number 1585D-E8TGJM-*xx*) connected to the power and control input connector module.

# **EtherNet/IP Address Rotary Switches**

Every device in an EtherNet/IP network must have a unique IP address. The power and control input connector module (cat. no. 2198T-CT-CP) contains rotary switches (S1, S2, and S3) to enable Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) or set static EtherNet/IP addresses manually. <u>Figure 30</u> identifies the location of the rotary switches. <u>Table 13</u> describes the possible settings for the rotary switches S1, S2, and S3.

#### Figure 30 - EtherNet/IP Rotary Switches and DIP Switch Locations

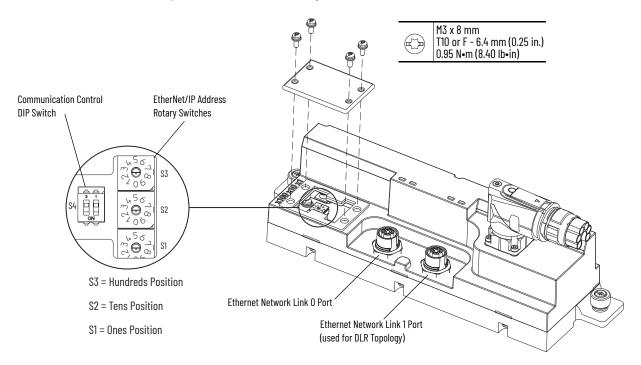


Table 13 - EtherNet/IP Rotary Switch Settings

| Switch Setting   | Function <sup>(1)</sup>  |
|------------------|--|
| 000              | Used to disable Protected Mode on all downstream motor modules. See <u>Protected Mode on</u> page 83 for instructions on disabling Protected Mode.   |
| 001254           | Sets the last octet of the IP address to the value indicated (xxx in 192.168.1.xxx) on the connected motor module. Every subsequent motor module is assigned an IP address with the last octet incremented by one, moving counter-clockwise around the track.                |
| 888              | A power cycle after the switches are set to 888 restores all factory default settings on all downstream motor module sections. Before you use this setting, read the first <b>IMPORTANT</b> statement on page $\frac{76}{10}$ for critical functional safety considerations. |
| 900              | Used to enable Protected Mode on all downstream motor modules to prevent configuration changes. See <u>Protected Mode on page 83</u> for instructions on enabling Protected Mode.  |
| 999              | Sets the IP address on all downstream motor modules to a value determined by either DHCP or an address that is stored in nonvolatile memory. IP addresses can be changed through the Module Configuration dialog box in RSLinx® software. '999' is the default setting.      |
| All other values | Reserved. Applying power to the iTRAK 5730 system with the switches set to a reserved value results in an "Illegal Address" exception on all downstream motor modules.   |

 Downstream modules include all motor modules up to the next installed power and control input connector module (cat. no. 2198T-CT-CP).

| IMPORTANT | Before changing the EtherNet/IP address rotary switch settings to 888, consider the following:  |
|-----------|---|
|           | <ul> <li>Restoring the factory default settings clears all functional safety configurations, resets safety ownership, and returns the motor module to the out-of-box-state.</li> <li>Only authorized personnel should attempt to reset the safety ownership.</li> <li>When the motor module returns to the out-of-box state, Safe Torque Off (STO) safety integrity is lost.</li> </ul> |
|           |   |

#### **DHCP** Configuration

The IP address rotary switches are set to '999' at the factory to enable DHCP. DHCP assigns IP address information from a pool of available addresses to newly connected devices (DHCP clients) in the network. You must use a BOOTP/DHCP software tool to set the IP addresses by using the hardware (MAC) addresses of the motor modules. The hardware address is on a label on the motor module.

With DHCP enabled, you must configure the IP address for each subsequent motor module in the Studio 5000 Logix Designer<sup>®</sup> application. IP addressing can also be changed through the Module Configuration dialog box in RSLinx<sup>®</sup> software. For more information about DHCP, see the Ethernet Reference Manual, publication <u>ENET-RM002</u>.

An Ethernet switch configured as a DLR ring supervisor can also act as a DHCP server to assign designated IP addresses to ring participants. Assignment of IP addresses is based on ring participant position. If a ring participant fails, a replacement device can be installed in the same position in the ring and automatically receive the same IP address as the replaced device.

#### Static IP Address Configuration

Manually set the rotary switches when working on a simple, isolated Ethernet network (for example, 192.168.1.xxx, where xxx is the last octet of the IP address). Switch S1 sets the '1's place, S2 the '10's place and S3 the '100's place.

**IMPORTANT** Changes to the EtherNet/IP address rotary switches settings only take effect after a power cycle.

When setting static IP addresses, the switches set the last octet for the motor module to which the connector module is connected and above which the switches are located, as shown in <u>Figure 31 on page 77</u>. Every subsequent motor module is assigned an IP address with the last octet incremented by one, moving counter-clockwise around the track. For an example of an iTRAK 5730 system that uses two Ethernet networks and two power and control input connector modules, see <u>Figure 32 on page 78</u>.

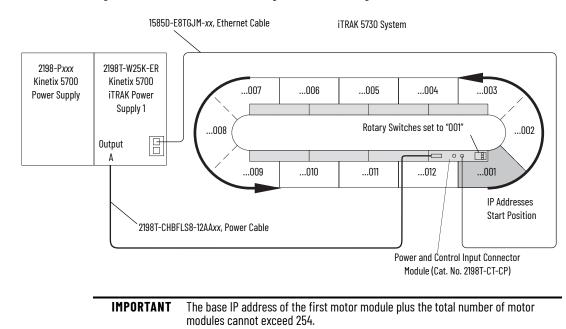


Figure 31 - Static IP Address Configuration and Assignment

For access to the rotary switches, see <u>Figure 30 on page 75</u>. Always replace the protective cover before placing the iTRAK 5730 system into operation. For instructions on how to set the IP address manually on the power and control input connector module, see <u>Set the IP Address</u> on page <u>82</u>.

# **Communication Control DIP Switch**

The communication control DIP switch (S4) is used to identify the backplane communication master for an iTRAK 5730 system and enables or disables access to the iTRAK 5730 diagnostic webpage. DIP switch S4 is contained on the power and control input connector module (cat. no. 2198T-CT-CP). See Figure 30 on page 75 for switch location. Table 14 identifies the possible switch settings.

Table 14 - Backplane Communication Control DIP Switch (S4) Settings

| Switch | Position | Description   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--------|----------|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| S4-1   | ON       | The power and control input connector module is the backplane communication master and initializes backplane communication for the entire track. 'ON' is the factory default setting. |  |  |  |  |  |
| OFF    | OFF      | The power and control input connector module section is not the backplane communication master.   |  |  |  |  |  |
| 0/ 0   | ON       | Enables access to the iTRAK 5730 diagnostic webpage.  |  |  |  |  |  |
| S4-2   | OFF      | Disables access to the iTRAK 5730 diagnostic webpage. 'OFF' is the default setting  |  |  |  |  |  |

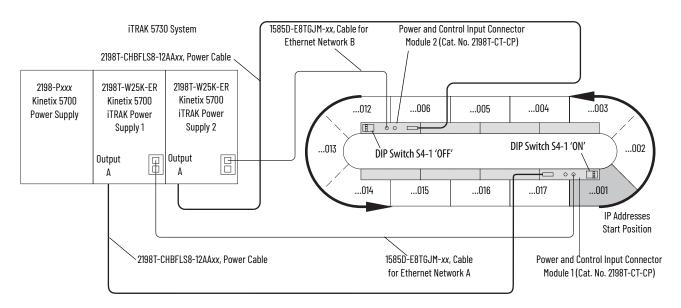
**IMPORTANT** Verify that DIP switch S4-1 is set to "ON" for one power and control input connector module per system only.

**IMPORTANT** Changes to the DIP switch S4 settings only take effect after a power cycle.

<u>Figure 32</u> provides an example of static IP addressing used in an iTRAK 5730 system with two Ethernet networks. In this example, the Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply 1 is on a separate Ethernet network from the Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply 2. The rotary switches on power and control input connector module 1 are set to "001". The rotary switches on power and control input connector module 2 must be set to "007" or greater.

DIP switch S4-1 on the power and control input connector module 1 is set to 'ON,' defining the module as the backplane communication master. DIP switch S4-1 on the power and control connector 2 must be set to "OFF."

Figure 32 - iTRAK 5730 System with Multiple Ethernet Networks and Static IP Addresses



# **Connect the Ethernet Cable**

Use the iTRAK machine Ethernet cable (cat. no. 1585D-E8TGJM-*xx*) to connect the Ethernet port from the iTRAK power supply to the iTRAK 5730 system. Follow these steps to connect the Ethernet cable to a connector module.



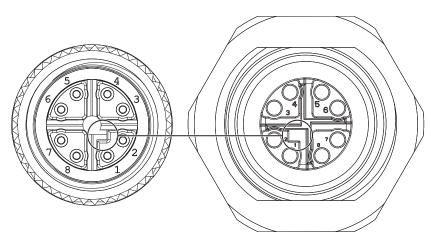
It is recommended that you connect the Ethernet cable to the connector module before installing the connector module on a motor module.

1. Remove the protective caps from the Ethernet ports on the connector module. If only one port is used, remove the protective cap from the Link 0 port only.

2. Verify that the connector pins are aligned and insert the Ethernet cable connector into the Ethernet connector on the connector module.

Connector Module Ethernet Port Connector

Ethernet Cable (cat. no. 1585D-E8TGJM-xx)



3. By turning the cable outer housing clockwise, secure the cable to the connector module mounting ring until the cable is fully seated.

# Notes:

# Configure and Start Up the iTRAK 5730 System

This chapter provides configuration and start-up procedures for your iTRAK<sup>®</sup> 5730 system with a Logix 5000<sup>®</sup> controller by using the Studio 5000 Logix Designer<sup>®</sup> application.

| Торіс                                      | Page |
|--|------|
| Studio 5000 Logix Designer                 | 81   |
| Configure the iTRAK 5730 System            | 82   |
| Configure and Customize the Project File   | 84   |
| Configure the Motion Group                 | 105  |
| Configure the Section Axis Properties      | 107  |
| Download the Program                       | 113  |
| Apply Power to the iTRAK 5730 System       | 113  |
| Understand Bus-sharing Group Configuration | 114  |
| Commission the iTRAK 5730 System           | 118  |
| Tune the Axes                              | 120  |

# Studio 5000 Logix Designer

To configure your iTRAK 5730 system, use a personal computer and the Studio 5000 Logix Designer application, version 33 or later. For the rest of this chapter, the Studio 5000 Logix Designer application is referred to as the Studio 5000<sup>®</sup> application. For help with using the Studio 5000 application as it applies to configuring the ControlLogix<sup>®</sup> or GuardLogix<sup>®</sup> controllers, see Additional Resources on page 233.

We recommend you develop your application program by using the standardized object-oriented Independent Cart Technology Libraries. Independent Cart Technology Libraries are application-centric library objects that are tested, documented, and life-cycle managed by Rockwell Automation for use with the Studio 5000 Application Code Manager. You can access and download the Independent Cart Technology Libraries on the Product Compatibility and Download Center website, <u>rock.auto/pcdc</u>.

# Configure the iTRAK 5730 System

You can include the iTRAK 5730 system in your Studio 5000 application by adding it to a configured EtherNet/IP<sup>™</sup> module or controller under the I/O configuration tree. After setting network parameters, you can view the iTRAK 5730 system status information in the Studio 5000 environment and use it in your Studio 5000 application.



Before you begin, make sure that you know the catalog numbers for the Kinetix<sup>®</sup> 5700 power supply, iTRAK 5730 power supply, Logix module and /or controller, and the iTRAK motor modules used in your motion control application.

## Set the IP Address

You can choose between static IP addresses or DHCP. See <u>Connect an</u> <u>EtherNet/IP Network to the iTRAK 5730 System</u> on page 75 before you complete this procedure. This procedure is used to set static IP addresses for the motor modules in your iTRAK 5730 system. IP addresses are formatted to private IP address values of 192.168.1.xxx.



The IP address rotary switches on the power and control input connector module are set to '999' with DHCP enabled at the factory.

Follow these steps to set the iTRAK 5730 system to static IP addresses on the power and control input connector module (cat. no. 2198T-CT-CP).

- 1. To access the rotary switches, remove the protective cover from the connector module chassis. For cover removal information, see <u>EtherNet/IP Address Rotary Switches</u> on page <u>75</u>.
- 2. Set the rotary switches between 001...254 to configure the last octet of the IP address.



The base address of the first motor module plus the total number of motor modules cannot exceed 254.

Settings are stored in nonvolatile memory. IP addressing can also be changed through the Module Configuration dialog box in RSLinx<sup>®</sup> software. Changes to the IP addressing take effect after power is cycled.

## **Protected Mode**

The iTRAK 5730 system supports Protected Mode. When the system is in Protected Mode, the motor modules do not allow any configuration changes, resets, or firmware updates when a controller connection is open. Protected Mode is enabled by default.

#### Enable Protected Mode

To enable Protected Mode, follow these steps:

- 1. Set the rotary switches on the power and control input connector module to setting 900.
- 2. Apply power to the iTRAK 5730 system as described in <u>Apply Power to</u> the iTRAK 5730 System on page 113.
- 3. Verify that the status indicators provide these indications:
  - The motor module Module (MOD) status indicators are flashing red
  - The motor module Network (NET) status indicators are off
  - The connector module Link (LINK 0/1) status indicators turn off
- 4. Remove power from the iTRAK 5730 system as described in <u>Remove</u> <u>Power from the iTRAK 5730 System on page 34</u>.
- 5. Set the switches on the power and control input connector module for normal operation.
- 6. Apply power to the iTRAK 5730 system as described in <u>Apply Power to</u> <u>the iTRAK 5730 System on page 113</u>.

All motor modules downstream of the power and control connector module are now in Protected Mode.

#### Disable Protected Mode

To disable Protected Mode, follow these steps:

- 1. Set the rotary switches on the power and control input connector module to setting 000.
- 2. Apply power to the iTRAK 5730 system as described in <u>Apply Power to</u> <u>the iTRAK 5730 System on page 113</u>.
- 3. Verify that the status indicators provide these indications:
  - The motor module Module (MOD) status indicators are flashing red
  - The motor module Network (NET) status indicators are off
  - The connector module Link (LINK 0/1) status indicators turn off
- 4. Remove power from the iTRAK 5730 system as described in <u>Remove</u> <u>Power from the iTRAK 5730 System on page 34</u>.
- 5. Set the switches on the power and control input connector module for normal operation.
- 6. Apply power to the iTRAK 5730 system as described in <u>Apply Power to</u> <u>the iTRAK 5730 System on page 113</u>.

All motor modules downstream of the power and control connector module now have Protected Mode disabled.

# Configure and Customize the Project File

These procedures assume that you have wired your iTRAK 5730 system. In this example, the GuardLogix<sup>®</sup> 5584ES safety controller dialog boxes are shown.

# **Configure the Controller**

Follow these steps to configure the controller.

1. Apply power to your controller and open your Studio 5000 application.



2. From the Create menu, choose New Project.

The New Project dialog box appears.

| 🥥 New Project |  |   | ? ×    | 🥑 New Project |   |   |  |  | ?    | ×   |
|---------------|--|---|--------|---------------|---|---|--|--|------|-----|
| Project Types |  | Search  | ×      | Project Types |   |   | Search   |  |      | ×   |
| 3 Logix       | <ul> <li>CompactLogix<sup>™</sup> 5380 Controll</li> <li>CompactLogix<sup>™</sup> 5480 Controll</li> <li>ControlLogix<sup>®</sup> 5570 Controlle</li> <li>ControlLogix<sup>®</sup> 5580 Controlle</li> <li>GuardLogix<sup>®</sup> 5580 Safety Con</li> <li>GuardLogix<sup>®</sup> 5580 Safety Con</li> <li>1756-L82ES GuardLogix<sup>®</sup></li> <li>1756-L82ES GuardLogix<sup>®</sup></li> </ul> | ler<br>r<br>r<br>ttroller<br>v 5580 Safety Controller<br>v 5580 Safety Controller | •      | ổ Logix       | 1756-<br>1756-<br>1756-<br>1756-<br>1756-<br>1756-<br>1756- | -L81E-NSE Cont<br>-L81EP Cont<br>-L82E Cont<br>-L82E-NSE Cont<br>-L83E Cont<br>-L83E-NSE Cont | rolLogix® 5580 (<br>rolLogix® 5580 (<br>rolLogix® 5580 (<br>rolLogix® 5580 (<br>rolLogix® 5580 (<br>rolLogix® 5580 (<br>rolLogix® 5580 ( | Controller<br>Controller<br>Controller<br>Controller<br>Controller<br>Controller |      | •   |
|               | 1756-L83ES GuardLogix®<br>1756-L84ES GuardLogix®<br>▷ Studio 5000® Logix Emulate™<br>Name: UM_SafetyController<br>Location: C:\Users\Kinetix\Desktr<br>Cancel  | 9 5580 Safety Controller<br>9 Controller  | Browse |               | 1756-<br>1756-<br>Name: U                                   |   |  | Controller   | Brow | vse |

Example Module Properties Dialog Box with GuardLogix® Controller Selections

Example Module Properties Dialog Box with ControlLogix Controller Selections

**IMPORTANT** If you are configuring a safety application, you must use a GuardLogix 5580 or Compact GuardLogix 5380 safety controller.

In this example, the typical dialog boxes for GuardLogix 5584ES controllers with embedded Ethernet are shown.

- 3. Expand the Logix 5000 controller family and select your controller.
- 4. Type the file Name.
- 5. Click Next.

#### The New Project dialog box appears.

| 🥑 New Project                          |   |   | ? ×    |   |
|--|---|---|--------|---|
| 1756-L84ES Guar<br>UM_SafetyController | rdLogix® 5580 Safety Controller   |   |        |   |
| Revision:                              | 33 ~  |   |        |   |
| Chassis:                               | 1756-A7 7-Slot ControlLogix Chassis   | ~ |        |   |
| Slot:                                  | 0 v (i) Project default will be SIL2/PLd with no safety partner.              |   |        |   |
| Security Authority:                    | No Protection   | ~ |        |   |
|  | Use only the selected Security Authority for authentication and authorization |   |        |   |
| Secure With:                           | Logical Name <controller name=""></controller>                                |   |        |   |
|  | Permission Set  | ~ |        |   |
| Description:                           |   |   |        |   |
|  |   |   |        |   |
|  |   |   |        |   |
|  |   |   |        |   |
|  | Cancel Back Next  | Т | Finish | 1 |
|  |   |   |        | - |

- 6. From the Revision pull-down menu, choose your software version.
- 7. Click Finish.

The new controller appears in the Controller Organizer under the I/ O Configuration folder.

8. From the Edit menu, choose Controller Properties.

The Controller Properties dialog box appears.

9. Click the Date/Time tab.

| Nonvolati                  | le Memory   | Capacity   | Internet Pr   | otocol                      | Port Conf  | inuration                          | Secu | irity | ΔIs | arm Log |
|----------------------------|---|--|---------------|-----------------------------|--|------------------------------------|------|-------|-----|---------|
| General                    | Major Faults  | Minor Faults   | Date/T        |                             | Advanced   | SFC Exe                            |      | Proje |     | Safet   |
|                            | se fields to configu<br>Set Dat   | ayed here is Contro<br>are Time attributes<br>e. Time and Zone f | of the Contro | iller.                      |  | me.<br>te and Time                 |      |       |     |         |
| Time Zone:                 |   | for Daylight Saving  | (+00:00)      | ÷                           | ondige Dat                                       |                                    |      |       |     |         |
|                            | Time Synchroniza  | tion   | onl<br>cha    | ine, active<br>assis, or an | me synchroniz<br>axes in any co<br>y other synch | ontroller in this<br>ronized devic |      |       |     |         |
| ⊖ Is a syncl<br>⊖Duplicate | tem time master<br>hronized time slav<br>CST master dete<br>stership disabled |  | 👍 Gua<br>ma   | ardLogix 5                  | ce unexpecter<br>560 and 5570 s<br>other time ma | safety control                     |      |       |     |         |
| ON₀CST I                   | master  |  |               |                             |  | Advanced                           |      |       |     |         |
|                            |   |  |               |                             |  |                                    |      |       |     |         |

10. Check Enable Time Synchronization.

The motion modules set their clocks to the module that you assign as the Grandmaster.

**IMPORTANT** Check Enable Time Synchronization for all controllers that participate in CIP Sync<sup>™</sup>. The overall CIP Sync network automatically promotes a Grandmaster clock, unless the priority is set in Advanced.

11. Click OK.

# **Configure the Kinetix 5700 Power Supply**

Follow these steps to configure a Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply.

1. Below the controller you created, right-click Ethernet and choose New Module.

The Select Module Type dialog box appears.

| 2198-P  | Cl                     | ear Filters |   |   |                | Hide Filters | *   |
|---|------------------------|-------------|---|---|----------------|--------------|-----|
| <ul> <li>Module Type C:</li> <li>Analog</li> <li>Communication</li> <li>Communications</li> <li>Communications</li> </ul> |                        | <b>^</b>    | <ul><li>✓ Ac</li><li>✓ Di:</li><li>✓ En</li></ul> | odule Type Vendor<br>Ivanced Energy Indi<br>alight<br>dress+Hauser<br>INUC CORPORATIO | ustries, Inc.  |              | < > |
| Catalog Number  | Description            |             |   | Vendor  | Category       |              | _   |
| 2198-P031   | Kinetix 5700 Bus Power | Supply, 10  | DA, 324-5   | 2 Rockwell Aut.   | Drive,Motion   |              |     |
| 2198-P070   | Kinetix 5700 Bus Power | Supply, 25  | 5A, 324-5   | 2 Rockwell Aut.   | . Drive,Motion |              |     |
| 2198-P141   | Kinetix 5700 Bus Power | Supply, 4   | 7A, 324-5   | 2 Rockwell Aut.   | Drive, Motion  |              |     |
| 2198-P208   | Kinetix 5700 Bus Power | Supply, 69  | 9A, 324-5   | 2 Rockwell Aut.   | . Drive,Motion |              |     |

- 2. By using the filters, put a check in the Motion checkbox and the Allen-Bradley® checkbox.
- 3. Select your 2198-Pxxx DC-bus power supply as appropriate for your hardware configuration.
- 4. Click Create.

|  | General  |  |   |  |
|--|--|--|---|--|
| Connection<br>Time Sync<br>Module Info<br>Internet Protocol<br>Port Configuration<br>Network<br>Motion<br>Associated Axes<br>- Power<br>- Digital Input<br>- Diagnostics | Type:<br>Vendor:<br>Parent:<br>Name:<br>Description:<br>Module Defin<br>Revision:<br>Electronic Ke<br>Power Struc<br>Connection: | 11.001 Change<br>eying: Compatible Module<br>ture: 2198-P031 | , 10A, 324-528 Volt<br>Ethernet Address<br>Private Network: 192.168.1. 3<br>IP Address:<br>Host Name: |  |

- 5. Configure the new module.
  - a. Type the module Name.
  - b. Select an Ethernet Address option.

In this example, the Private Network address is selected.

c. Enter the address of your 2198-Pxxx DC-bus power supply.

In this example, the last octet of the address is 3.

6. Click the Power category.

| General*<br>Connection                                  | Power                          |                             |                        |          |
|---|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------|----------|
| Time Sync<br>Module Info                                | Power Structure:               | 2198-P031                   |                        | Advanced |
| Internet Protocol                                       |                                | Kinetix 5700 Bus Power Supp | ply, 10A, 324-528 Volt |          |
| <ul> <li>Port Configuration</li> <li>Network</li> </ul> | Bus Configuration:             | Shared AC/DC                | $\sim$                 |          |
| Motion  | Primary Bus Sharing Group:     | Group1                      | $\sim$                 |          |
| - Associated Axes<br>- Power                            | Bus Regulator Action:          | Shunt Regulator             | ~                      |          |
| - Digital Input   | Shunt Regulator Resistor Type: | External 🔘 Internal         |                        |          |
| Diagnostics   | External Shunt:                | <none></none>               | ~                      |          |

7. From the pull-down menus, choose the power options appropriate for your hardware configuration.

| Attribute  | Menu                        | Description   |
|--|-----------------------------|---|
| Bus Configuration  | Shared AC/DC <sup>(1)</sup> | Applies to 2198-Pxxx DC-bus power supply (converter) modules.   |
| • Group1<br>Bus-sharing Group <sup>(2)</sup><br>• Group2<br>• Group3 |                             | Applies to any bus-sharing configuration.                       |
| Bus Regulator Action   | Disabled                    | Disables the internal shunt resistor and external shunt option. |
|  | Shunt Regulator             | Enables the internal and external shunt options.                |

(1) Shared AC/DC bus configuration is the default selection for DC-bus power supplies.

(2) For more information on bus-sharing groups, see <u>Understand Bus-sharing Group Configuration</u> on page <u>114</u>.



**ATTENTION:** To avoid damage to equipment, all modules that are physically connected to the same shared-bus connection system must be part of the same Bus-sharing Group in the Studio 5000 application.

- 8. To close the New Module dialog box, click OK.
- 9. Your 2198-Pxxx DC-bus power supply appears in the Controller Organizer under the Ethernet network in the I/O Configuration folder.
- ✓ I/O Configuration
   ✓ 1756 Backplane, 1756-A7
   [0] 1756-L84ES UM\_SafetyController
   ✓ Letternet
   [1756-L84ES UM\_SafetyController
   ✓ 2198-P031 UM\_Converter
- 10. To close the Select Module Type dialog box, click Close.
- 11. Right-click the DC-bus power supply that you created in the Controller Organizer and choose Properties.

The Module Properties dialog box appears.



To configure the remaining DC-bus power supply properties, you must close the New Module dialog box and reopen it as the Module Properties dialog box.

12. Click the Digital Input category.

| General  | Digital Input    |                   |
|--|------------------|-------------------|
| Connection   |                  |                   |
| Time Sync  |                  |                   |
| Module Info  | Axis:            | 1 ~               |
| Internet Protocol                                  | Axis Name:       | <none></none>     |
| Port Configuration                                 | i dia nume.      | shores            |
| Network  |                  |                   |
| Motion   | Digital Input 1: | Unassigned $\lor$ |
| <ul> <li>Associated Axes</li> <li>Power</li> </ul> | Digital Input 2: | Unassigned $$     |
| - Digital Input                                    |                  |                   |
| Diagnostics  |                  |                   |

- 13. From the Digital Input pull-down menu, choose Bus Capacitor OK or Shunt Thermal Switch OK to monitor your capacitor module status or the shunt thermal switch, respectively, depending on your application.
- 14. Click the Associated Axes category.

| Module Properties: Lo   | cal (2198-P031 11.001) 🛛 🗙 |               |            |
|---|----------------------------|---------------|------------|
| General<br>Connection<br>Time Sync  | Associated Axes            |               |            |
| Module Info<br>Internet Protocol<br>Port Configuration<br>Network<br>Motion<br>Associated Axes<br>Power<br>Digital Input<br>Diagnostics | Axis 1:                    | <none></none> | ✓ New Axis |

15. Click New Axis.

The New Tag dialog box appears.

| New Tag                  |                           | ×        |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|----------|
|                          |                           |          |
| Name:                    | Axis_Converter            | Create 🔻 |
| Description:             | ^                         | Cancel   |
|                          |                           | Help     |
|                          | ~                         |          |
| Usage:                   | <controller></controller> |          |
| Туре:                    | Base ~ Connection         |          |
| Alias For:               | ~                         |          |
| Data Type:               | AXIS_CIP_DRIVE            |          |
| Parameter<br>Connection: | ~                         |          |
| Scope:                   | UM_SafetyController ~     |          |
| Class:                   | Standard ~                |          |
| External<br>Access:      | Read/Write ~              |          |
| Style:                   | ~                         |          |
| Constant                 |                           |          |
| Sequencing               |                           |          |
| Open AXIS_               | CIP_DRIVE Configuration   |          |
| Open Param               | eter Connections          |          |

16. Type the axis Name.

AXIS\_CIP\_DRIVE is the default Data Type.

17. Click Create.

The axis (Axis\_Converter in this example) appears in the Controller Organizer under Motion Groups > Ungrouped Axes and is assigned as Axis\_Converter.

- Motion Groups
   Ungrouped Axes
   Axis\_Converter
- 18. In the Module Properties dialog box, click Apply.
- 19. If you have multiple 2198-Pxxx Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supplies, repeat <u>step 1...step 18</u>, beginning on page <u>86</u>. When you have completed adding your DC-bus power supply, continue with <u>Configure the iTRAK</u> <u>5730 Power Supply</u> on page <u>90</u>.

# Configure the iTRAK 5730 Power Supply

Follow these steps to configure the iTRAK 5730 DC-bus power supply.

1. Below the controller you created, right-click Ethernet and choose New Module.

#### The Select Module Type dialog box appears.

| Description<br>Kinetix 5700 iTRAK Power Supply | Vendor       | Category     |  |
|--|--------------|--------------|--|
| Kinotix E700 (TDAK Dowor Supply                |              |              |  |
| Kinetix 5700 THAAK Power Supply                | Rockwell Aut | Drive,Motion |  |
|  |              |              |  |
|  |              |              |  |
|  |              |              |  |
|  |              |              |  |
|  |              |              |  |
|  |              |              |  |
|  |              |              |  |
|  |              |              |  |

- 2. By using the filter, enter 2198T, and select the 2198T-W25K-ER Kinetix 5700 iTRAK Power Supply.
- 3. Click Create.

| New Module  |   | >                       | < |
|---|---|-------------------------|---|
| General*<br>Connection<br>Time Sync<br>Module Info<br>Port Configuration<br>Network<br>Motion<br>Associated Axes<br>Power<br>Digital Input<br>Diagnostics | General<br>Type:<br>Vendor:<br>Parent:<br>Name:<br>Description:<br>Module Defini<br>Revision:<br>Electronic Ke<br>Power Struct<br>Connection: | ying: Compatible Module |   |
| Status: Creating  |   | OK Cancel Help          |   |

The New Module dialog box appears.

- 4. Configure the new module.
  - a. Type the module Name.
  - b. Select an Ethernet Address option. In this example, the Private Network address is selected.
  - c. Enter the address of your 2198T-W25K-ER iTRAK DC-bus power supply. In this example, the last octet of the address is 5.

5. Click the Power category.

New Module

| General*  | Power                          |  |        |          |
|---|--------------------------------|--|--------|----------|
| Connection<br>Time Sync<br>Module Info<br>Internet Protocol | Power Structure:               | 2198T-W25K-ER<br>Kinetix 5700 iTRAK Power Supply |        | Advanced |
| Port Configuration  | Bus Configuration:             | Shared DC/DC                                     | $\sim$ |          |
| - Motion  | Primary Bus Sharing Group:     | Group 1  | $\sim$ |          |
| Associated Axes<br>Power*                                   | Secondary Bus Sharing          | Group 2  | $\sim$ |          |
| - Digital Input   | Bus Regulator Action:          | Shunt Regulator                                  | $\sim$ |          |
| - Diagnostics   | Shunt Regulator Resistor Type: | O External   Internal                            |        |          |
|   | External Shunt:                | None   |        |          |
|   |                                |  |        |          |

6. From the pull-down menus, choose the power options appropriate for your hardware configuration.

| Attribute                                     | Menu   | Description  |
|---|--|--|
| Bus Configuration                             | Shared DC/DC <sup>(1)</sup>                            | Applies to 2198T-W25K-ER iTRAK 5730 DC-bus power supply modules. |
| Primary Bus-sharing Group<br>(2)              | <ul><li>Group1</li><li>Group2</li><li>Group3</li></ul> | Applies to any primary bus-sharing configuration.                |
| Secondary Bus-sharing<br>Group <sup>(2)</sup> | <ul><li>Group1</li><li>Group2</li><li>Group3</li></ul> | Applies to any secondary bus-sharing configuration.              |
| Bus Regulator Action                          | Disabled   | Disables the internal shunt resistor and external shunt option.  |

(1) Shared DC/DC bus configuration is the default selection for iTRAK 5730 DC-bus power supplies.

(2) For more information on bus-sharing groups, see <u>Understand Bus-sharing Group Configuration</u> on page <u>114</u>.



**ATTENTION:** To avoid damage to equipment, all modules that are physically connected to the same shared-bus connection system must be part of the same Bus-sharing Group in the Studio 5000 application.

- 7. To close the New Module dialog box, click OK.
- 8. Your 2198T-W25K-ER power supply appears in the Controller Organizer under the Ethernet network in the I/O Configuration folder.
- 🔺 🛋 I/O Configuration
  - 🛯 🥮 1756 Backplane, 1756-A7
    - [0] 1756-L84ES UM\_SafetyController
  - ▲ 器 Ethernet
    - 1756-L84ES UM\_SafetyController
    - 2198-P031 UM\_Converter
    - 1 2198T-W25K-ER UM\_iPS
- 9. To close the Select Module Type dialog box, click Close.
- 10. Right-click the iTRAK power supply that you created in the Controller Organizer and choose Properties.

The Module Properties dialog box appears.



To configure the remaining DC-bus power supply properties, you must close the New Module dialog box and reopen it as the Module Properties dialog box.

11. Click the Digital Input category.

| General                                | Digital Input    |               |
|--|------------------|---------------|
| Connection                             |                  |               |
| - Time Sync                            |                  | •             |
| Module Info                            | Axis:            | 1 ~           |
| Internet Protocol                      | Axis Name:       | <none></none> |
| <ul> <li>Port Configuration</li> </ul> |                  |               |
| - Network                              |                  |               |
| Motion                                 | Digital Input 1: | Unassigned ~  |
| <ul> <li>Associated Axes</li> </ul>    |                  |               |
| Power                                  |                  |               |
| <ul> <li>Digital Input*</li> </ul>     |                  |               |
| Diagnostics                            |                  |               |

- 12. From the Digital Input pull-down menu choose Enable or Unassigned, depending on your application.
- 13. Click the Associated Axes category.

| Module Properties: Local   | al (2198T-W25K-ER 12.001) 🗙 |                          |
|--|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| General  | Associated Axes             |                          |
| - Connection<br>Time Sync  |                             |                          |
| <ul> <li>Inne Sync</li> <li>Module Info</li> <li>Internet Protocol</li> <li>Port Configuration</li> <li>Network</li> <li>Motion</li> <li>Associated Axes</li> <li>Power</li> <li>Digital Input</li> <li>Diagnostics</li> </ul> | Axis 1:                     | <none> v New Axis</none> |

14. Click New Axis.

The New Tag dialog box appears.

| New Tag                  |                           |            | ×        |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------|----------|
| Name:                    | Axis_iPS                  |            | Create 🔻 |
| Description:             |                           | ^          | Cancel   |
|                          |                           |            | Help     |
|                          |                           | $\sim$     |          |
| Usage:                   | <controller></controller> | $\sim$     |          |
| Туре:                    | Base $\vee$               | Connection |          |
| Alias For:               |                           | ~          |          |
| Data Type:               | AXIS_CIP_DRIVE            |            |          |
| Parameter<br>Connection: |                           | ~          |          |
| Scope:                   | UM_SafetyController       | ~          |          |
| Class:                   | Standard                  | $\sim$     |          |
| External<br>Access:      | Read/Write                | ~          |          |
| Style:                   |                           | ~          |          |
| Constant                 |                           |            |          |
| Sequencing               |                           |            |          |
| Open AXIS_C              | CIP_DRIVE Configuration   |            |          |
| Open Param               | eter Connections          |            |          |

15. Type the axis Name.

AXIS\_CIP\_DRIVE is the default Data Type.

16. Click Create.

The axis (Axis\_iPS in this example) appears in the Controller Organizer under Motion Groups > Ungrouped Axes and is assigned as Axis\_iPS. Motion Groups
 Ungrouped Axes
 Axis\_Converter
 Axis\_iPS

17. Click Apply.

## **Configure the iTRAK 5730 Motor Modules**

Follow these steps to configure iTRAK 5730 motor modules.



A curved motor module is composed of three individual sections. Each of the three curve sections must be added as a separate motor module and configured individually. You choose which section is assigned to the defined motor module later in this procedure.

1. Above the DC-bus power supply (converter) you created, right-click Ethernet and choose New Module.

The Select Module Type dialog box appears.

| lect Module Type<br>Catalog Module Discover<br>itrak                                  | y Favorites   | Clear Filters |  |  |              | Hide Filter | s \$  |
|---|---|---------------|--|--|--------------|-------------|-------|
| Module Type Cate     Analog     Communication     Communications     Communications A |   | ~             | <ul> <li>Advant</li> <li>Dialight</li> <li>Endres</li> </ul> | e Type Vendor F<br>ced Energy Indus<br>t<br>s+Hauser<br>C CORPORATIO | stries, Inc. |             | <     |
| Catalog Number<br>2198T-W25K-ER<br>iTRAK 5730   | Description<br>Kinetix 5700 iTRAK F<br>iTRAK 5730 Intellige |               | em, Sectio   | Vendor<br>Rockwell Aut<br>Rockwell Aut                               |              | Safety      |       |
| 2 of 673 Module Types Fo  | bund  |               |  |  | ,            | Add to Favo | rites |

- 2. By using the filter, enter iTRAK, and select the iTRAK 5730 Intelligent Track System, Section.
- 3. Click Create.

| The | New | Modul | le dia | log | box | ap | pears. |
|-----|-----|-------|--------|-----|-----|----|--------|
|-----|-----|-------|--------|-----|-----|----|--------|

| New Module   |  |  |  |         |  |    |        | ×    |
|--|--|--|--|---------|--|----|--------|------|
| General*   | General  |  |  |         |  |    |        |      |
| <ul> <li>Connection</li> <li>Safety</li> <li>Time Sync</li> <li>Module Info</li> <li>Internet Protocol</li> <li>Port Configuration</li> <li>Network</li> <li>Motion</li> <li>Associated Axes</li> <li>Power</li> <li>Diagnostics</li> <li>Cyclic Read(Write</li> <li>Track Configuration</li> <li>Motion Safety</li> <li>Actions</li> <li>SS1</li> </ul> | Type:<br>Vendor:<br>Parent:<br>Name:<br>Description:<br>Module Defin<br>Revision:<br>Electronic Ke<br>Power Struc<br>Safety Appli<br>Connection:<br>Motion Safet | Rockwell A<br>Local<br>UM_ITRAK<br>ition | 12.001<br>Compatible M<br>iTRAK 5730<br>Networked<br>Motion and Si | Bradley | tem, Section, Network Safet<br>Ethernet Address<br>Private Network<br>IP Address:<br>Safety Network<br>Number: |    |        |      |
| Status: Creating   |  |  |  |         |  | ОК | Cancel | Help |

Example New Module Dialog Box with GuardLogix Controller Selections

- 4. Configure the new motor module properties.
  - a. Type the module Name.
  - b. Select an Ethernet Address option.

In this example, the Private Network address is selected.

c. Enter the address of your motor module.

In this example, the last octet of the address is 10.

| IMPORTANT | In addition to the motor module name and IP address, the motor<br>module is also given a number. You do not enter this number; it is<br>assigned automatically based on the position of the motor module<br>relative to the power and control input connector module. The first<br>motor module that is connected to the power and control input<br>connector module is numbered 0, the next motor module 1, and so on.<br>When a fault about a motor module appears, the fault text includes the<br>motor module number as the sub code at the end of the fault text. For<br>example, fault text "INIT FLT 28 - Sub Code 1" means that the second<br>motor module from the power and control input connector module is<br>affected. |
|-----------|--|
|-----------|--|

d. Click Advanced if using Network Address Translation with safety connection to add drive module configured IP address.

5. Under Module Definition click Change.

The Module Definition dialog box appears.

| Revision:                                  | 12 ~ 001 🛉                   |   |
|--|------------------------------|---|
| Electronic Keying:                         | Compatible Module            | ` |
| Power Structure:                           | iTRAK 5730                   | ` |
| Verify Power Rating<br>Safety Application: | on Connection Networked      | 1 |
| Connection:                                | Motion and Safety            | ~ |
| Motion Safety:                             | Safe Stop Only - No Feedback | 1 |

- 6. Define the motor module.
  - a. Select your Electronic Keying option from the pull-down menu (Compatible Module is the default setting).
  - b. From the Safety Application pull-down menu, choose between Safety Off or Networked for an integrated safety application.
  - c. From the Connection pull-down menu, choose the Connection mode for your motion application.

| <b>Connection Mode</b> | Safety Options   | Description   |
|------------------------|--|---|
| Motion and Safety      | Integrated mode  | Motion connections and integrated STO are managed by this controller.   |
| Motion Only            | Integrated mode, if there<br>is a secondary safety<br>controller | <ul> <li>Motion connections are managed by this controller.</li> <li>Integrated STO is managed by another controller that has a Safety-only connection to the drive.</li> </ul> |
| Safety Only            | Integrated mode  | <ul> <li>Integrated STO is managed by this controller.</li> <li>Motion connections are managed by another controller that has a Motion-only connection to the drive.</li> </ul> |



When 'Safety' appears in the Connection mode, integrated safety is implied.

The default setting for Motion and Safety is 'Safe Stop Only - No Feedback.' The (SNN) field populates automatically when the connection mode includes an Integrated Motion and Safety or Safetyonly connection.

7. To close the Module Definition dialog box, click OK.

8. Click the Power category.

| General*  | Power                 |  |          |
|---|-----------------------|--|----------|
| Connection<br>Safety<br>Time Sync<br>Module Info  | Power Structure:      | ITRAK 5730<br>ITRAK 5730 motor module with integrated 200/41 | Advanced |
| Internet Protocol   | Bus Configuration:    | Shared DC $\vee$   |          |
| Network     Motion     Associated Axes     Power*     Diagnostics     Cyclic Read/Write     Track Configuration     Motion Safety     Actions     STO     SS1 | Secondary Bus Sharing | Group 2 v  |          |

**IMPORTANT** The Studio 5000 application enforces shared-bus configuration rules for iTRAK 5730 motor modules.

9. From the Secondary Bus-sharing pull-down menu, choose the appropriate bus-sharing group for your hardware configuration. For information on bus-sharing groups, see <u>Understand Bus-sharing</u> <u>Group Configuration on page 114</u>.



**ATTENTION:** To avoid damage to equipment, all modules that are physically connected to the same shared-bus connection system must be part of the same Bus-sharing Group in the Studio 5000 application.

- 10. To close the Module Properties dialog box, click OK.
- 11. To close the Select Module Type dialog box, click Close.

Your iTRAK 5730 motor module appears in the Controller Organizer under the Ethernet network in the I/O Configuration folder.

| 🔺 ⊆ I/O Configuration              |
|------------------------------------|
| 🛽 🛲 1756 Backplane, 1756-A7        |
| [0] 1756-L84ES UM_SafetyController |
| ⊿ 뷺 Ethernet                       |
| 1756-L84ES UM_SafetyController     |
| 2198-P031 UM_Converter             |
| 2198T-W25K-ER UM_iPS               |
|                                    |

12. Right-click the motor module that you created in the Controller Organizer and choose Properties.

The Module Properties dialog box appears.



To configure the remaining motor module properties, you must close the New Module dialog box and reopen it as the Module Properties dialog box.

If your application includes integrated safety, continue with <u>step 13</u>. Otherwise, go to <u>Continue iTRAK 5730 Motor Module Configuration</u> on page <u>99</u>. 13. Click the Safety category.

|  | Safety          |                     |                     |                    |          |  |  |
|--|-----------------|---------------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------|--|--|
| - Connection   |                 |                     |                     |                    |          |  |  |
| Safety   | Connection      | Deguasted Desket    | Connection Reaction | Max Observed       |          |  |  |
| - Time Sync<br>- Module Info                                       | Type            | Interval (RPI) (ms) | Time Limit (ms)     | Network Delay (ms) |          |  |  |
| - Module Info<br>- Internet Protocol                               | Safety Input    | 10 ÷                | · · · ·             |                    | Advanced |  |  |
| - Port Configuration   | Safety Output   | 20                  |                     |                    | Advanced |  |  |
| - Network  | Salety Output   | 20                  | 00.0                | Reset              |          |  |  |
| Motion   |                 |                     |                     |                    |          |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Associated Axes</li> </ul>                                | Configuration O | wnership:           |                     |                    |          |  |  |
| - Power  |                 |                     |                     |                    |          |  |  |
| - Diagnostics  | Reset Ownership |                     |                     |                    |          |  |  |
| <ul> <li>Cyclic Read/Write</li> <li>Track Configuration</li> </ul> |                 |                     |                     |                    |          |  |  |
| -Motion Safety   | Configuration S | ignature:           |                     |                    |          |  |  |
| Actions  |                 |                     |                     |                    |          |  |  |
| STO  | ID: f(          | )d2_6124            | (Hex)               | Сору               |          |  |  |
| - SS1  | _               |                     |                     |                    |          |  |  |
|  | Date:           | 9/20/2019           |                     |                    |          |  |  |
|  | _               |                     |                     |                    |          |  |  |
|  | Time:           | 4:46:35 PM 🌲        | 56 🌲 ms             |                    |          |  |  |
|  |                 |                     |                     |                    |          |  |  |
|  |                 |                     |                     |                    |          |  |  |
|  |                 |                     |                     |                    |          |  |  |

- 14. The connection between the owner and the iTRAK 5730 motor module is based on the following:
  - Servo drive
  - GuardLogix slot number
  - GuardLogix
  - Path from the GuardLogix controller to the motor module
  - Configuration signature

If any differences are detected, the connection between the GuardLogix controller and the motor module is lost, and the yellow yield icon appears in the controller project tree after you download the program.

15. Click Advanced.

The Advanced Connection Reaction Time Limit Configuration dialog box appears.

| Requested Packet Interval (RPI): | 10 🔶 | ms (6 - 500)            |
|----------------------------------|------|-------------------------|
| Timeout Multiplier:              | 2    | (1-4)                   |
| Network Delay Multiplier:        | 200  | % (10-600)              |
| Connection Reaction Time Limit:  | 40.1 | ms                      |
| Output                           |      |                         |
| Requested Packet Interval (RPI): | 20   | ms (Safety Task Period) |
| Timeout Multiplier:              | 2    | (1-4)                   |
| Network Delay Multiplier:        | 200  | % (10-600)              |
| Connection Reaction Time Limit:  | 60.0 | ms                      |
|                                  |      |                         |

Analyze each safety channel to determine the appropriate settings. The smallest Input RPI allowed is 6 ms. Selecting small RPI values consumes network bandwidth and can cause spurious trips because other devices cannot get access to the network.

For more information about the Advanced Connection Reaction Time Limit Configuration, refer to <u>Additional Resources on page 233</u> for the appropriate user manual for your GuardLogix or Compact GuardLogix controller.

- 16. To close the Advanced dialog box, click OK.
- 17. To save the Safety category parameters, click Apply.

### Continue iTRAK 5730 Motor Module Configuration

Follow these steps to configure the axes for your iTRAK 5730 system motor modules.

1. Right-click the iTRAK 5730 motor module that you created and choose Properties.

The Module Properties dialog box appears.

2. Select the Track Configuration category.

| 🖞 Module Properties: Local (iTRAK 5730 12.001) 🗙   |
|--|
| Image: Second Control of Control o |

3. From the Track ID pull-down menu, select your Track ID.

When multiple modules share the same Track ID, these modules are identified as being configured as a single "Track System." This Track ID allows the Studio 5000 application to validate the track system as a whole. Motor modules that specify a 'O' or 'Not Specified' Track ID are not validated because they are treated as standalone sections when validating track systems.

4. From the Mover Axis Assignment Sequence pull-down menu, choose the Mover Axis Assignment Sequence for your motion application.

This configuration parameter determines how the movers are assigned a number for identification purposes. When a fault about a mover appears, the fault text includes the mover number as the sub code at the end of the fault text. Movers can be numbered based on their position at the time of assignment relative to the track position 0, or relative to a reference mover. If a reference mover is used, it is designated as Mover 0 and is the only mover with a south pole position magnet (cat. no. 2198T-N1-0304) installed. This magnet electrically identifies it as the reference mover. For descriptions of the possible mover axis assignment sequences, see the following table, <u>Figure 33 on page 100</u>, and <u>Figure 34 on page 101</u>.

| Mover Axis Assignment<br>Sequence           | Description  |
|---|--|
| Decreasing Position                         | The motor module assigns movers on the track as decreasing sequential axis instances. The mover with the highest position value is the first mover (Mover 0), followed by movers with decreasing position values (Movers 1, 2,).   |
| Increasing Position                         | The motor module assigns movers on the track as increasing sequential axis instances. The mover with the lowest position value is the first mover (Mover O), followed by movers with increasing position values (Movers 1, 2,).  |
| Decreasing Position from<br>Reference Mover | The motor module assigns movers on the track as decreasing sequential axis instances based on the mover that is identified as the Reference Mover. The Reference Mover is the first mover (Mover 0), followed by the other movers (Movers 1, 2,) in the decreasing position direction from the Reference Mover. See <u>Figure 34 on page 101</u> . |
| Increasing Position from<br>Reference Mover | The motor module assigns movers on the track as increasing sequential axis instances based on the mover that is identified as the Reference Mover. The Reference Mover is the first mover (Mover 0), followed by the other movers (Movers 1, 2,) in the increasing position direction from the Reference Mover. See Figure 34 on page 101.         |

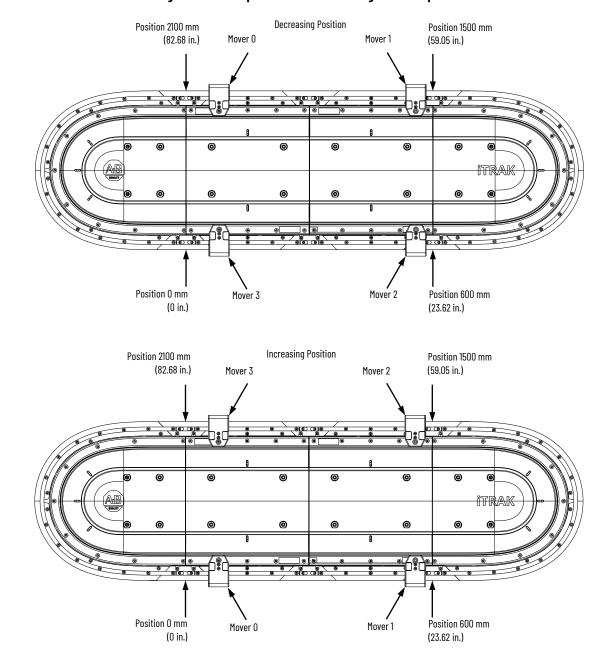
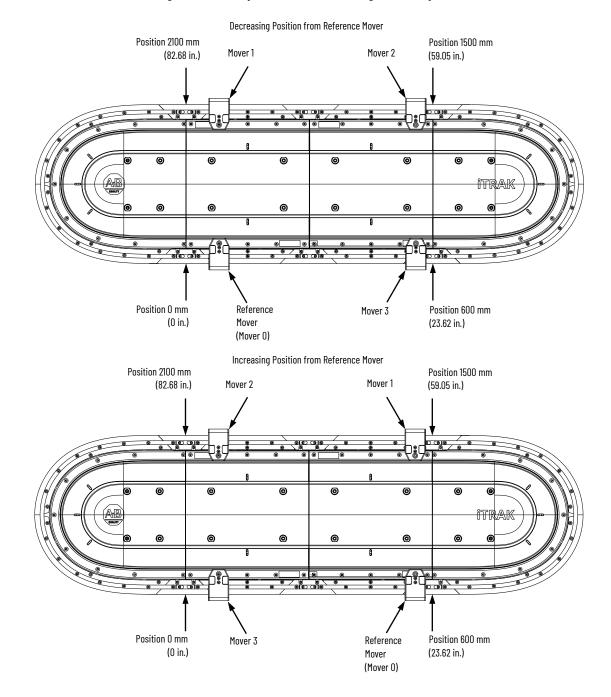


Figure 33 - Examples of Mover Axis Assignment Sequences Based on Track Position

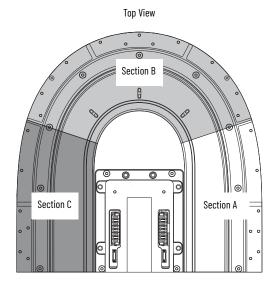


#### Figure 34 - Examples of Mover Axis Assignment Sequences Based on Reference Mover

5. From the Section Motor pull-down menu, select the section motor that corresponds to your motor module.

**IMPORTANT** A curved motor module is composed of three individual sections: curve section A, curve section B, and curve section C. Each of the three curve sections must be added as a separate motor module and configured individually.

- If your motor module is a straight section, select 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2
- If your motor module is a curve section A, select 2198T-L20-T0309-D18-S2-A
- If your motor module is a curve section B, select 2198T-L20-T0309-D18-S2-B
- If your motor module is a curve section C, select 2198T-L20-T0309-D18-S2-C



6. Enter the length of your track system in the Track Length field.

Take into account that each curved motor module is composed of three sections and each straight motor module is one section. Use the following equation to determine the length of your track system:

Length of track = Number of sections x 300 mm (11.8 in.)

7. To save your changes, click Apply.

8. Select the Associated Axes Category.

| General  | Associated Axes        |                           |        |   |          |
|--|------------------------|---------------------------|--------|---|----------|
| Connection<br>Safety   |                        |                           |        | _ |          |
| Time Sync<br>Module Info   | Axis 1 (Section):      | <none></none>             | $\sim$ |   | New Axis |
| Internet Protocol<br>Port Configuration                            | Motor Feedback Device: | Integrated Track Feedback |        | _ |          |
| Network  | Axis 2 (Mover):        | <none></none>             | ~      |   | New Axis |
| - Associated Axes  | Motor Feedback Device: | Integrated Track Feedback |        | _ |          |
| Power<br>Diagnostics   | Axis 3 (Mover):        | <none></none>             | $\sim$ |   | New Axis |
| <ul> <li>Cyclic Read/Write</li> <li>Track Configuration</li> </ul> | Motor Feedback Device: | Integrated Track Feedback |        | _ |          |
| Motion Safety<br>Actions   | Axis 4 (Mover):        | <none></none>             | $\sim$ |   | New Axis |
| -STO   | Motor Feedback Device: | Integrated Track Feedback |        |   |          |
|  | Axis 5 (Mover):        | <none></none>             | $\sim$ |   | New Axis |
|  | Motor Feedback Device: | Integrated Track Feedback |        |   |          |
|  |                        |                           |        |   |          |
|  |                        |                           |        |   |          |

For each iTRAK 5730 motor module, five axes are possible; one section axis and up to four mover axes.

- Axis 1 is the section axis.
- Axis 2...Axis 5 are the mover axes.

**IMPORTANT** All iTRAK 5730 motor modules must have an associated section axis.

9. Next to Axis 1 (Section), click New Axis.

| New Tag                  |                           | ×        |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|----------|
| Name:                    | Axis_1                    | Create 🔻 |
| Description:             | ^                         | Cancel   |
|                          |                           | Help     |
|                          | ~                         |          |
| Usage:                   | <controller></controller> |          |
| Туре:                    | Base ~ Connection         |          |
| Alias For:               | ~                         |          |
| Data Type:               | AXIS_CIP_DRIVE            |          |
| Parameter<br>Connection: | ~                         |          |
| Scope:                   | UM_SafetyController ~     |          |
| Class:                   | Standard v                |          |
| External<br>Access:      | Read/Write ~              |          |
| Style:                   | ~                         |          |
| Constant                 |                           |          |
| Sequencing               |                           |          |
| Open AXIS_C              | CIP_DRIVE Configuration   |          |
| Open Param               | eter Connections          |          |

The New Tag dialog box appears.

10. Type the axis Name.

AXIS\_CIP\_DRIVE is the default Data Type.

11. Click Create.

The axis (Axis\_1 in this example) appears in the Controller Organizer under Motion Groups> Ungrouped Axes and is assigned as Axis\_1.

Motion Groups
 Ungrouped Axes
 Axis\_1
 Axis\_Converter
 Axis\_iPS

12. To configure a Mover axis, next to Axis *n* (Mover), click New Axis.



If a mover axis is not assigned to the motor axis, continue with <u>Configure the</u> <u>Motion Group</u> on page <u>105</u>.

#### The New Tag dialog box appears.

| New Tag                  |                           |            | ×        |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|------------|----------|
| Name:                    | Axis_2                    |            | Create 🔻 |
| Description:             |                           | ^          | Cancel   |
|                          |                           |            | Help     |
|                          |                           | ~          |          |
| Usage:                   | <controller></controller> | $\sim$     |          |
| Type:                    | Base $\vee$               | Connection |          |
| Alias For:               |                           | ~          |          |
| Data Type:               | AXIS_CIP_DRIVE            |            |          |
| Parameter<br>Connection: |                           | ~          |          |
| Scope:                   | UM_SafetyController       | ~          |          |
| Class:                   | Standard                  | $\sim$     |          |
| External<br>Access:      | Read/Write                | ~          |          |
| Style:                   |                           | $\sim$     |          |
| Constant                 |                           |            |          |
| Sequencing               |                           |            |          |
| Open AXIS_0              | CIP_DRIVE Configuration   |            |          |
| Open Param               | eter Connections          |            |          |

13. Type the axis Name.

AXIS\_CIP\_DRIVE is the default Data Type.

14. Click Create.

The axis (Axis\_2 in this example) appears in the Controller Organizer under Motion Groups> Ungrouped Axes and is assigned as Axis\_2.

Motion Groups
 Ungrouped Axes
 Axis\_1
 Axis\_2
 Axis\_Converter
 Axis\_IPS

- 15. Click Apply.
- 16. If you have multiple movers, repeat <u>step 12</u>...<u>step 15</u> for each mover.

# **Configure the Motion Group**

Follow these steps to configure the motion group.

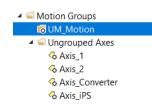
1. In the Controller Organizer, right-click Motion Groups and choose New Motion Group.

| New Tag                  |                           | $\times$ |
|--------------------------|---------------------------|----------|
| Name:                    | UM_Motion                 | Create 🗸 |
| Description:             | ^                         | Cancel   |
|                          |                           | Help     |
|                          | ~                         |          |
| Usage:                   | <controller></controller> |          |
| Туре:                    | Base ~ Connection         |          |
| Alias For:               | ~                         |          |
| Data Type:               | MOTION_GROUP              |          |
| Parameter<br>Connection: | ~                         |          |
| Scope:                   | UM_SafetyController ~     |          |
| Class:                   | Standard ~                |          |
| External<br>Access:      | Read/Write ~              |          |
| Style:                   | ~                         |          |
| Constant                 |                           |          |
| Sequencing               |                           |          |
| Open MOTIC               | DN_GROUP Configuration    |          |
| Open Param               | eter Connections          |          |

#### The New Tag dialog box appears.

- 2. Type the new motion group Name.
- 3. Click Create.

Your new motion group appears in the Controller Organizer under the Motion Groups folder.



4. Right-click the new motion group and choose Properties.

| Axis Assignment Attribute Tag | n_motion                                       | > |
|-------------------------------|--|---|
| Unassigned:                   | Assigned:                                      |   |
|                               | Axis_1<br>Axis_2<br>Axis_Converter<br>Axis_iPS |   |
| Add>                          | < Remove                                       |   |
| ОК                            |  |   |

#### The Motion Group Properties dialog box appears.

- 5. On the Axis Assignment tab, select and add each of your axes (created earlier) to the Assigned category.
- 6. Click the Attribute tab and edit the default values as appropriate for your application.
- 7. Click OK.

Your axes appear below the new motion group that you created earlier.

Motion Groups
 WM\_Motion
 Axis\_1
 Axis\_2
 Axis\_Converter
 Axis\_IPS
 Ungrouped Axes

# Configure the Section Axis Properties

Follow these steps to configure section axis properties.

- 1. In the Controller Organizer, right-click a section axis and choose Properties.
- 2. Select the General category.

The General dialog box appears.

| General  | General                 |                |        |           |  |
|--|-------------------------|----------------|--------|-----------|--|
| Notor<br>Model   | Axis Configuration:     | Track Section  | $\sim$ |           |  |
| - Motor Feedback<br>- Actions<br>- Exceptions<br>- Cyclic Parameters<br>- Parameter List<br>- Status<br>- Faults & Alarms<br>- Taq | Feedback Configuration: | Motor Feedback | v      |           |  |
|  | Assigned Group          |                |        |           |  |
|  | Motion Group:           | UM_Motion      | ×      | New Group |  |
|  | Update Period:          | 2.0            |        |           |  |
|  | Associated Module       |                |        |           |  |
|  | Module:                 | UM_iTRAK       | ~      |           |  |
|  | Module Type:            | iTRAK 5730     |        |           |  |
|  | Power Structure:        | iTRAK 5730     |        |           |  |
|  | Axis Number:            | 1              | ~      |           |  |
|  |                         |                |        |           |  |
|  |                         |                |        |           |  |

3. In the Associated Module section, in the Module pull-down menu, verify the name of the associated module.

The iTRAK 5730 system catalog number appears in the Module Type and Power Structure fields.

4. Click Apply.

5. Select the Actions category.

From this dialog box, you can program actions and change the action for exceptions (faults). For more information on configuration selections, see <u>iTRAK 5730 Motor Module and Mover Behavior on</u> <u>page 132</u>.

| 🙀 Axis Properties - Axis_1  | ×    |
|---|------|
| Categories:<br>General Actions to Take Upon Conditions  | _    |
| Model       Standard Actions       Parameters         Model       Disable (MSF) Stopping Action:       Current Decel & Disable          Exceptions       Connection Loss Stopping Action:       Current Decel & Disable          Cyclic Parameter Ist       Status       Parameter Ist         Parameter Ist       Inverter Overload Action:          Tag       Inverter Overload Action:          Safety Actions       Safe Torque Off Action Source:       Connected Drive         Safe Torque Off Action Source:       Connected Drive |      |
| Axis State:     Safety State:       Manual Tune     OK     Cancel     Apply   | Help |

6. Select the Parameter List category.

From this dialog box, you can change the values for different parameters as appropriate for your application.

| - General<br>Motor                   | Motion Axis Parameters           |                         |                             |         |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|---------|
| Model                                | Parameter Group: All             |                         | ✓ Associate                 | ed Page |
| - Motor Feedback                     |                                  |                         |                             |         |
| - Actions                            | Name                             | Value                   | Unit                        |         |
| Exceptions                           | ConnectionLossStoppingAction     | Current Decel & Disable | Onit                        | - ~     |
| — Cyclic Parameters — Parameter List | Feedback1CycleInterpolation      |                         | Feedback Counts/Feedback Cy | 4       |
| Status                               | Feedback1CycleResolution         |                         | Feedback Cycles/Meter       | 4       |
| Faults & Alarms                      | Feedback1Length                  | 0.3                     |                             | 4       |
| - Tag                                | Feedback1Type                    | Track Section           |                             | 4       |
|                                      | Feedback1Unit                    | Meter                   |                             | 4       |
|                                      | FeedbackDataLossUserLimit        |                         | Data Packets                | 4       |
|                                      | InverterOverloadAction           | <none></none>           |                             | 4       |
|                                      | InverterThermalOverloadUserLimit |                         | % Inverter Rated            | -       |
|                                      | MechanicalBrakeEngageDelay       | 0.0                     |                             | -       |
|                                      | MechanicalBrakeReleaseDelay      | 0.0                     |                             | -       |
|                                      | MotorCatalogNumber               | 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2  |                             | -       |
|                                      | MotorDataSource                  | Catalog Number          |                             | -       |
|                                      | MotorMaxWindingTemperature       | 0.0                     |                             |         |
|                                      | MotorOverloadAction              | <none></none>           | -                           |         |
|                                      | MotorOverloadLimit               | 100.0                   | % Motor Rated               | -       |
|                                      | MotorRatedContinuousCurrent      |                         | Amps (RMS)                  |         |
|                                      | MotorRatedOutputPower            |                         | kW                          | 1       |
|                                      | MotorRatedPeakCurrent            | 4.53                    | Amps (RMS)                  | 1       |
|                                      | MotorRatedVoltage                | 400.0                   | Volts (RMS)                 | ~       |
|                                      |                                  |                         |                             |         |
|                                      |                                  |                         |                             |         |
| s State:                             | Safety State:                    |                         |                             |         |

- 7. Click OK.
- 8. For each section axis, repeat <u>step 1</u>...<u>step 7</u>.

## **Configure the Mover Axis Properties**

Follow these steps to configure mover axis properties.

- 1. In the Controller Organizer, right-click a mover axis and choose Properties.
- 2. Select the General category.

The General dialog box appears.

| 🙀 Axis Properties - Axis_2  |   |  |   |        |           | ×    |
|---|---|--|---|--------|-----------|------|
| Categories:   |   |  |   |        |           |      |
| General   | General   |  |   |        |           |      |
| Motor Motor Motor Scaling Polarity Autotune Coad Backlash Compliance  | Axis Configuration:<br>Feedback Configuration:<br>Application Type:<br>Loop Response: | Position Loop<br>Motor Feedback<br>Basic<br>Medium | v           v           v           v           v           v |        |           |      |
| Friction     Observer     Observer     Velocity Loop     Acceleration Loop     Torque/Current Loop     Planner     Homing     Actions | Assigned Group<br>Motion Group:<br>Update Period:<br>Associated Module                | UM_Motion<br>2.0                                   | ~   |        | New Group |      |
| - Exceptions<br>- Cyclic Parameters<br>- Parameter List<br>- Status<br>- Faults & Alarms<br>- Tag                                     | Module:<br>Module Type:<br>Power Structure:<br>Axis Number:                           | UM_ITRAK<br>ITRAK 5730<br>ITRAK 5730<br>2          | ~<br>~  |        |           |      |
| Axis State:<br>Manual Tune  |   |  | ОК  | Cancel | Apply     | Help |

3. In the General section, from the pull-down menus change configuration settings as needed for your application.

| Attribute              | Menu           | Description   |
|------------------------|----------------|---|
| Axis Configuration     | Position Loop  | Position Control Mode, Closed Loop Control Method   |
| AXIS CONTIGUIATION     | Torque Loop    | Torque Control Mode, Closed Loop Control Method   |
| Feedback Configuration | Motor Feedback | When Motor Feedback is selected, then commutation, acceleration, velocity, and position feedback signals are all derived from motor-<br>mounted Feedback. |

For more information on Control Modes, see the Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP Network Reference Manual, publication <u>MOTION-RM003</u>.

4. Choose an Application Type, if applicable.

| Position Loop              | ~                                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| Motor Feedback             | ~                                    |
| Basic                      | ~                                    |
| Custom<br>Basic            |                                      |
| Tracking<br>Point-to-Point |                                      |
|                            | Basic<br>Custom<br>Basic<br>Tracking |

The Application Type determines the type of motion control application. This attribute is used to set the Gain Tuning Configuration Bits. This table lists the gains established based on application type.

| Application Type      | Крі | Kvi | iHold | Kvff | Kaff | torqLPF |
|-----------------------|-----|-----|-------|------|------|---------|
| Custom <sup>(1)</sup> | -   | -   | _     | _    | -    | -       |
| Basic                 | No  | No  | No    | Yes  | No   | Yes     |
| Tracking              | No  | Yes | No    | Yes  | Yes  | Yes     |
| Point-to-Point        | Yes | No  | Yes   | No   | No   | Yes     |
| Constant Speed        | No  | Yes | No    | Yes  | No   | Yes     |

 If you set the type to Custom, you can control the individual gain calculations by changing the bit settings in the Gain Tuning Configuration Bits Attribute.

5. Choose a Loop Response, if applicable.

| Categories:                      |                         |                                 |        |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|--------|
| General                          | General                 |                                 |        |
| Model<br>Model<br>Motor Feedback | Axis Configuration:     | Position Loop<br>Motor Feedback | ~      |
| Scaling                          | Feedback Configuration: |                                 |        |
| Polarity<br>Autotune             | Application Type:       | Basic                           | ~      |
| E-Load                           | Loop Response:          | Medium                          | $\sim$ |
| Backlash<br>Compliance           |                         | Low<br>Medium                   |        |
| Friction<br>Observer             |                         | High                            |        |

Loop Response settings also impact the calculations that are made that can minimize the need for you to perform an Autotune or a Manual Tune. The loop response impacts the spacing between the position loop and the proportional and integral gains. This response impacts how aggressively a given profile is tracked.

6. In the Associated Module section, from the Module pull-down menu, verify the name of the associated module.

The iTRAK 5730 system catalog number appears in the Module Type and Power Structure fields.

7. To save your changes, click Apply.

Select the Scaling Category and edit the default values as appropriate for your application. 8.

| General<br>Motor                    | Scaling to Convert N | lotion from Co | ntroller U | Inits to User D  | efined Units   |     |         |                    |  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------|------------|------------------|----------------|-----|---------|--------------------|--|
| Model                               | Load Type:           | Direct Coup    | led Linea  | · · ·            |                |     | Paramet | ers                |  |
| - Motor Feedback                    | Transmission         |                |            |                  |                |     |         |                    |  |
| Scaling<br>Polarity                 | Ratio I:O:           | 1              |            | : 1              | Rev            |     |         |                    |  |
| - Polarity<br>- Autotune            |                      | 1              |            |                  | 1164           |     |         |                    |  |
| Load                                | Actuator             |                |            |                  |                |     |         |                    |  |
| Backlash                            | Туре:                | <none></none>  |            |                  |                |     |         |                    |  |
| Compliance<br>Friction              | Lead:                | 1.0            |            | Millimeter/R     | ev 🗸           |     |         |                    |  |
| Observer                            | Diameter:            | 1.0            |            | Millimeter       |                |     |         |                    |  |
| Position Loop                       |                      | 1.0            |            | Willimeter       | ~              |     |         |                    |  |
| Velocity Loop                       | Scaling              |                |            |                  |                |     |         |                    |  |
| - Acceleration Loop                 | Units:               | Position Un    | ts         |                  |                |     |         |                    |  |
| - Torque/Current Loop<br>Planner    | Scaling:             | 1.0            |            | Position Units   | per            | 1.0 |         | Motor Millimeter 🗸 |  |
| - Homing                            | Travel               |                |            | 1                | 1.5.69         |     |         |                    |  |
| - Actions                           |                      |                |            | 1                |                |     |         |                    |  |
| - Exceptions                        | Mode:                | Cyclic         | ~          |                  |                |     |         |                    |  |
| Cyclic Parameters<br>Parameter List | Range:               | 1000.0         |            | Position Units   |                |     |         |                    |  |
| - Status                            | Unwind:              | 2400.0         |            | Position Units   | per            | 1.0 |         | Cycle              |  |
| - Faults & Alarms<br>Tag            | Soft Trave           | d Limits       |            | j i osidon onits |                |     |         |                    |  |
|                                     |                      | m Positive:    | 0.0        |                  | Position Units |     |         |                    |  |
|                                     |                      |                |            |                  |                |     |         |                    |  |
|                                     | Maximu               | m Negative:    | 0.0        |                  | Position Units |     |         |                    |  |
|                                     |                      |                |            |                  |                |     |         |                    |  |



The Unwind value is the same as the overall length of your track.

- 9. To save any changes, click Apply.
- 10. Select the Load category and edit the default values as appropriate for your application.

| Motor               | Load Inertia/Mass         |           |                                   |  |
|---------------------|---------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------------|--|
| Model               | Load merca/Mass           |           |                                   |  |
| Motor Feedback      | Load Coupling:            | Rigid ~   |                                   |  |
| Scaling<br>Polarity | Use Load Ratio            |           |                                   |  |
| Autotune            |                           |           | -                                 |  |
| Load                | Load Ratio:               | 0.0       |                                   |  |
| Backlash            | Motor Mass:               | 0.754     | Кд                                |  |
| Compliance          |                           |           |                                   |  |
| Friction            | Total Mass:               | 0.754     | Kg                                |  |
| Observer            |                           |           |                                   |  |
| Position Loop       |                           |           |                                   |  |
| Velocity Loop       | Inertia/Mass Compensation |           |                                   |  |
| Acceleration Loop   | System Inertia:           | 1.9389263 | % Rated/(Meter/s^2)               |  |
| Torque/Current Loop | •                         | 51 531000 |                                   |  |
| Planner             | System Acceleration:      | 51.574936 | Meter/s <sup>2</sup> @100 % Rated |  |
| Homing<br>Actions   |                           |           |                                   |  |
| Exceptions          |                           |           |                                   |  |
| Cyclic Parameters   | Active Load Compensation  |           |                                   |  |
| Parameter List      | Torque Offset             | 0.0       | % Rated                           |  |
| Status              |                           |           |                                   |  |
| Faults & Alarms     |                           |           |                                   |  |
| Tag                 |                           |           |                                   |  |
|                     |                           |           |                                   |  |
|                     |                           |           |                                   |  |
|                     |                           |           |                                   |  |
|                     |                           |           |                                   |  |

11. To save any changes, click Apply.

12. Select the Actions category and program any actions and change the action for exceptions (faults) as appropriate for your application.

| G Axis Properties - Axis_2  |  |                         |             |            |       | ×    |
|---|--|-------------------------|-------------|------------|-------|------|
| Categories:   |  |                         |             |            |       |      |
| General   | Actions to Take Upon Conditions  |                         |             |            |       |      |
| Motor<br>- Model<br>- Model<br>- Motor Feedback<br>- Scaling<br>- Polarity<br>- Autotune<br>- Backlash<br>- Compliance<br>- Friction<br>- Observer<br>- Position Loop<br>- Velocity Loop<br>- Acceleration Loop<br>- Torque/Current Loop<br>- Planner<br>- Homing<br>- Actions<br>- Exceptions<br>- Cyclic Parameters<br>- Parameter List<br>- Status<br>- Faults & Alarms<br>- Tag | Standard Actions<br>Disable (MSF) Stopping Action:<br>Connection Loss Stopping Action: | Current Decel & Disable | <b>&gt;</b> | Parameters |       |      |
| Axis State:   |  |                         |             |            |       |      |
| Manual Tune   |  |                         | ОК          | Cancel     | Apply | Help |

13. Select the Parameter List category and edit the values for different parameters as appropriate for your application.

| General                            | Motion Axis Parameters             |                |                    |            |  |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------|------------|--|
| Motor<br>I Model<br>Motor Feedback | Parameter Group: All               |                | ∼ Assoc            | iated Page |  |
| – Scaling<br>– Polarity            | Name                               | Value          | Unit               |            |  |
| Autotune                           | AccelerationFeedforwardGain        | 0.0            |                    |            |  |
| Load                               | Acceleration imit                  |                | Position Units/s*2 |            |  |
| Backlash                           | ActuatorDiameter                   | 10             |                    | _          |  |
| Compliance                         | ActuatorDiameterUnit               | Millimete      | -                  | _          |  |
| Friction                           | ActuatorLead                       | 1.0            |                    |            |  |
| Observer                           | ActuatorLeadUnit                   | Millimeter/Rev |                    |            |  |
| Position Loop                      | ActuatorType                       | <none></none>  |                    |            |  |
| Velocity Loop                      | AdaptiveTuningConfiguration        | Disableo       |                    |            |  |
| Acceleration Loop                  | AdaptiveTuningGainScalingFactorMi  | n 0.1          |                    |            |  |
| Torque/Current Loop                | AdaptiveTuningTrackingNotchFilters | 4              |                    |            |  |
| Planner                            | AverageVelocityTimebase            | 0.25           | s                  |            |  |
| Homing<br>Actions                  | BacklashCompensationWindow         | 0.0            | Position Units     |            |  |
| - Exceptions                       | BacklashReversalOffset             | 0.0            | Position Units     |            |  |
| - Cyclic Parameters                | CoastingTimeLimit                  | 0.0            | s                  |            |  |
| - Parameter List                   | CommandNotchFilter2Depth           | 0.0            |                    |            |  |
| Status                             | CommandNotchFilter2Frequency       | 0.0            | Hertz              |            |  |
| Faults & Alarms                    | CommandNotchFilter2Gain            | 1.0            |                    |            |  |
| Tag                                | CommandNotchFilter2Width           | 1.0            |                    |            |  |
| 5                                  | CommandNotchFilterDepth            | 0.0            |                    |            |  |
|                                    | CommandNotchFilterFrequency        | 0.0            | Hertz              | ¥ .        |  |
|                                    |                                    |                |                    |            |  |

- 14. Click OK.
- 15. For each mover axis, repeat <u>step 1</u>...<u>step 14</u>.

## **Download the Program**

## Apply Power to the iTRAK 5730 System

After completing the Studio 5000 application and saving the file, you must download your program to the Logix 5000 processor.

You must complete the installation, power and control connections, and configuration for your iTRAK 5730 system before you complete this procedure.



**SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid a hazard of electrical shock, complete all installation and power connections of the iTRAK 5730 system components before applying power. Once power is applied, connector terminals can have voltage present even when not in use.

Follow these steps to apply power to the iTRAK 5730 system.

1. Apply 24V DC control power.

The motor module status indicators begin this startup sequence:

- a. During the start-up process, NET and MOD appear steady red.
- b. During the power-up sequence, NET flashes green, red, off, and MOD flashes green, red, green.
- c. When the startup sequence completes, NET appears steady green, MOD continues to flash green.

If the startup sequence does not begin, check the 24V control power connections.

- 2. When the startup sequence completes, verify that the NET status indicator is steady green and the MOD status indicator is flashing green.
  - a. Verify that the Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply axis-state is PRECHARGE.
  - b. Verify the iTRAK power supply axis-state is PRECHARGE.

If the DC-bus power supply and iTRAK power supply do not reach the specified axis state and the two status indicators are not steady green, refer to <u>Interpret Status Indicators</u> on page <u>126</u>.

3. Apply mains input power and monitor the DC BUS voltage on the LCD display on the DC-bus power supply and iTRAK power supply.

If the DC BUS does not reach the expected voltage level, check the three-phase input power connections.



It can take as long as 1.8 seconds after input power is applied before the iTRAK 5730 motor modules can accept motion commands (does not apply to the iTRAK power supply).

- a. Verify that the DC-bus power supply axis-state is RUNNING.
- b. Verify that the iTRAK power supply axis-state is RUNNING.
- c. Verify that all motor module status indicators are steady green.

If the DC-bus power supply or iTRAK power supply does not reach the specified axis state, refer to <u>Fault Code Overview</u> on page <u>124</u>.

- 4. If the iTRAK system has not yet been commissioned, then before you apply a load to the track and movers, you must commission the iTRAK system. See, <u>Commission the iTRAK 5730 System</u> on page <u>118</u>.
- 5. If all of the following statements are true, then perform <u>step a</u>:
  - The system uses a vertical or stand-up mounting orientation (to determine orientation, see <u>Figure 1 on page 13</u>).
  - The iTRAK system has previously been powered and run and then power was removed (power removal is covered in <u>Remove Power</u> from the iTRAK 5730 System on page 34).
  - To prevent movers from falling, mechanical securing mechanisms such as an external brake, arrester, or clamp mechanism, were used to secure movers before power was last removed.
  - You intend to use the iTRAK to move the movers before you remove power from the system.
  - a. While the system is powered, and before attempting to move any movers, remove all mover securing mechanisms. Use protective equipment such as heat protective gloves to avoid burn hazards while removing the mover securing mechanisms. See <u>Protection</u> <u>Against Contact with Hot Parts on page 35</u>. If these mechanisms are removed while the system is not powered, the movers they secure will fall and may cause injury or damage.

## Understand Bus-sharing Group Configuration

When configuring the Module Properties > Power category for each iTRAK 5730 motor module axis, you must assign the motor module to the appropriate bus-sharing (power) group. In other words, assign each motor module to the same secondary bus-sharing group as the iTRAK power supply to which it is physically connected.

## **Bus-sharing Groups Example**

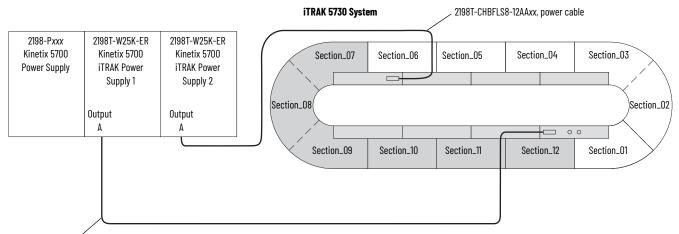
In <u>Figure 35</u>, 12 iTRAK 5730 motor module sections are needed to support the motion application. All 12 section axes are configured in the same Motion group in the Studio 5000 application.

However, the 12 motor module sections are also configured as two bus-sharing groups. With two secondary bus-sharing groups, a fault on iTRAK Power Supply 1 only results in a Bus Power Sharing exception on motor modules in Secondary Bus-sharing Group 2. The fault has no effect on the operation of Secondary Bus-sharing Group 3 motor modules. However, a fault on the 2198-*Pxxx* Kinetix 5700 Power Supply results in Bus Power Sharing exceptions on all motor modules in both secondary bus-sharing groups since both iTRAK Power Supplies are in Primary Bus-sharing Group 1 and cascade the exception to their respective secondary bus-sharing groups.

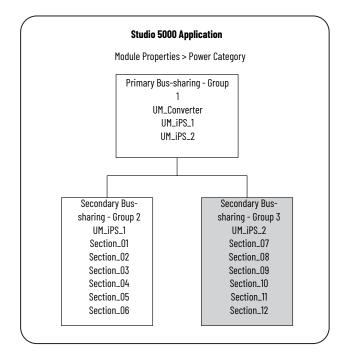


**ATTENTION:** To avoid damage to equipment, all modules that are physically connected to the same shared-bus connection system must be part of the same Bus-sharing Group in the Studio 5000 application.

#### Figure 35 - Bus-sharing Groups Example



2198T-CHBFLS8-12AAxx, power cable



## **Configure Bus-sharing Groups**

In both groups, the Bus Configuration for the iTRAK power supply is Shared DC/DC and the Bus Configuration for the iTRAK 5730 system is Shared DC.

Figure 36 - Group 1 iTRAK 5730 Power Supply Configuration

| Module Properties: Loc   | al (2198T-W25K-ER 12.001) ×    |  |        |          |
|--|--------------------------------|--|--------|----------|
| - General  | Power                          |  |        |          |
| Connection     Time Sync     Module Info     Internet Protocol | Power Structure:               | 2198T-W25K-ER<br>Kinetix 5700 iTRAK Power Supply |        | Advanced |
| - Port Configuration   | Bus Configuration:             | Shared DC/DC                                     | $\sim$ |          |
| - Motion   | Primary Bus Sharing Group:     | Group 1  | $\sim$ |          |
| Associated Axes  | Secondary Bus Sharing          | Group 2  | ~      |          |
| - Digital Input  | Bus Regulator Action:          | Shunt Regulator                                  | $\sim$ |          |
| Diagnostics  | Shunt Regulator Resistor Type: | O External   Internal                            |        |          |
|  | External Shunt:                | None   | $\sim$ |          |
|  |                                |  |        |          |
|  |                                |  |        |          |
|  |                                |  |        |          |
|  |                                |  |        |          |
|  |                                |  |        |          |
|  |                                |  |        |          |
|  |                                |  |        |          |
|  |                                |  |        |          |



| Module Properties: Loc  | al (iTRAK 5730 12.001) 🗙 |                         |                                 |          |
|---|--------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------|----------|
| General   | Power                    |                         |                                 |          |
| Connection  |                          |                         |                                 |          |
| Safety  | Power Structure:         | ITRAK 5730              |                                 | Advanced |
| - Time Sync<br>- Module Info  |                          | ITRAK 5730 motor module | with integrated 200/400V servo  |          |
| - Internet Protocol   | Due Carfiermetica.       | Shared DC               | with integrated 2007 1007 berro |          |
| - Port Configuration  | Bus Configuration:       | Shared DC               | ~                               |          |
| Network   | Secondary Bus Sharing    | Group 2                 | ~                               |          |
| Hotion     Associated Axes     Power     Diagnostics     Cryclic Read/Write     Track Configuration     Actions     ST0     SS1 |                          |                         |                                 |          |

| _ |  |                                |  |          |          |
|---|--|--------------------------------|--|----------|----------|
| 1 | Module Properties: Loca  | al (2198T-W25K-ER 12.001) 🗙    |  |          |          |
|   | General  | Power                          |  |          |          |
|   | Connection     Time Sync     Module Info     Internet Protocol | Power Structure:               | 2198T-W25K-ER<br>Kinetix 5700 iTRAK Powe | r Supply | Advanced |
|   | - Port Configuration   | Bus Configuration:             | Shared DC/DC                             | ~        |          |
|   | - Motion   | Primary Bus Sharing Group:     | Group 1                                  | $\sim$   |          |
|   | <ul> <li>Associated Axes</li> <li>Power*</li> </ul>            | Secondary Bus Sharing          | Group 3                                  | ~        |          |
|   | <ul> <li>Digital Input</li> <li>Diagnostics</li> </ul>         | Bus Regulator Action:          | Shunt Regulator                          | $\sim$   |          |
|   | Diagnostics  | Shunt Regulator Resistor Type: | O External                               | l.       |          |
|   |  | External Shunt:                | None                                     |          |          |
|   |  |                                |  |          |          |
|   |  |                                |  |          |          |
|   |  |                                |  |          |          |
|   |  |                                |  |          |          |
|   |  |                                |  |          |          |
|   |  |                                |  |          |          |
|   |  |                                |  |          |          |
|   |  |                                |  |          |          |



| General                              | Power                 |  |           |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|--|-----------|
| Connection                           |                       |  |           |
| Safety                               | Power Structure:      | ITRAK 5730   | Advanced  |
| <ul> <li>Time Sync</li> </ul>        | rower structure.      |  | Advanceam |
| Module Info                          |                       | iTRAK 5730 motor module with integrated 200/400V servo |           |
| Internet Protocol Port Configuration | Bus Configuration:    | Shared DC $\qquad \lor$                                |           |
| Network                              | Secondary Bus Sharing | Group 3 🗸  |           |
| Motion                               | ,,                    |  |           |
| Associated Axes                      |                       |  |           |
| Power*                               |                       |  |           |
| - Diagnostics                        |                       |  |           |
| - Cyclic Read/Write                  |                       |  |           |
| - Track Configuration                |                       |  |           |
| Motion Safety                        |                       |  |           |
| Actions                              |                       |  |           |
| STO                                  |                       |  |           |
| -SS1                                 |                       |  |           |
| 001                                  |                       |  |           |
|                                      |                       |  |           |
|                                      |                       |  |           |
|                                      |                       |  |           |
|                                      |                       |  |           |
|                                      |                       |  |           |
|                                      |                       |  |           |
|                                      |                       |  |           |

## Commission the iTRAK 5730 System

The iTRAK 5730 system must be commissioned properly to provide accurate mover position feedback on the track system. This section provides instructions on how to establish smooth mover transitions between motor module sections.

## Motor Module Section Gap Position Compensation

To control mover positions accurately on the track system, the motor modules monitor feedback from the mover position magnets. Motor module sections can report different absolute positions at the gap where modules adjoin. To reconcile the difference in the reported absolute positions, the motor module sections calculate a position compensation. The position compensation is applied to the boundaries between sections to produce smooth mover sectionto-section transitions.

To calculate the position compensation, the motor module sections must identify the absolute position differences at all transitions as movers traverse the track. The calculated values for the position compensation are measured for each mover and stored in nonvolatile memory. After subsequent power cycles, each motor section reads nonvolatile memory and immediately applies the appropriate position compensation. Take the following into consideration when deciding whether to assign a reference mover:

- When you configure a reference mover, the correct sequence number and position compensation are applied automatically to each mover in the system after a power cycle.
- When you do not configure a reference mover, position accuracy across motor module gaps can be degraded after a power cycle.



**ATTENTION:** A pinch point hazard exists. A mover can have sudden and fast motion due to magnetic attraction. To avoid personal injury, do not put your fingers between the mover and motor module.



You can assign a reference mover and mover sequence numbers in the Mover Axis Assignment Sequence field in the Module Properties - Track Configuration dialog box. For descriptions of how the Mover Axis Assignment Sequence settings work, see <u>page 99.</u>

You must complete the procedure <u>Calculate and Store Position Gap</u> <u>Compensation Values on page 119</u> in the following situations:

- After the initial iTRAK 5730 system installation is complete, and before the system is put into service
- After a motor module has been replaced
- After a mover has been replaced, or removed from or added to the track system
- After the 'Mover Axis Assignment Sequence' field selection has been changed

This procedure assumes that you have configured your iTRAK 5730 system, your Logix 5000 controller, and applied power to the system.

**IMPORTANT** Before you commission the iTRAK 5730, verify that the MOD and NET status indicators are operating as described in <u>Interpret Status Indicators</u> on page <u>126</u>.

### **Calculate and Store Position Gap Compensation Values**

Follow these steps to complete the section gap position-compensation procedure.

- 1. Enable the iTRAK system with an MSO instruction or motion direct command to all section and mover axes.
- 2. At a speed of approximately 0.5 m/s, run the movers around the track for 3...5 minutes.



If a motor overspeed fault (FLT S04) occurs, reduce the speed to less than 0.5 m/s, and repeat step 2. If an overspeed fault persists, disable the section and mover axes and manually move the movers around the track. Each mover must be moved back and forth across the motor section gaps at least 2...3 times.

- 3. Disable the track system with an MSF instruction or motion direct command to all section and mover axes.
- 4. Save your project.

Previously stored values can make calculating new values problematic. If overspeed errors persist, complete these steps.

- 1. For all motor modules in the system, in the Track Configuration dialog box, change the 'Mover Axis Assignment Sequence' field.
- 2. Download the project to delete all position compensation values from nonvolatile memory.
- 3. For all motor modules, change the 'Mover Axis Assignment Sequence' field back to the original value.
- 4. Repeat the gap position compensation procedure.

## **Tune the Axes**

This procedure assumes that you have configured your iTRAK 5730 system, your Logix 5000 controller, and applied power to the system.

**IMPORTANT** Before you tune your axes, verify that the MOD and NET status indicators are operating as described in <u>Interpret Status Indicators</u> on page <u>126</u>.

For help with using the Studio 5000 application as it applies to tuning your axes with ControlLogix EtherNet/IP modules or CompactLogix 5370 controllers, see <u>Additional Resources on page 233</u>.

### **Tune the Axes with Load Observer**

The load observer feature provides high-performance motion control without having to manually tune your axis. Using load observer with a default set of gains can yield high-performance right out of the box. Most of the time, there is no need to perform an autotune or further optimize gain settings.

Follow these steps to configure the iTRAK 5730 system for high performance by using the load observer feature.

1. Verify that the load is connected.

Reattach the load if it was disconnected.



**ATTENTION:** If the iTRAK 5730 system has not been enabled before (new installation), verify that you have safeguards in place to safely remove power from the drive if there is an unstable situation where the drive can produce undesired motion.

- 2. Click the Autotune category in the mover Axis Properties dialog box.
  - a. From the pull-down menu for Application Type, choose Custom.
  - b. From the pull-down menu for Loop Response, choose Medium.
  - c. From the pull-down menu for Load Coupling, choose Rigid settings.
  - d. Verify that only the Velocity Feedforward box is checked.
  - e. Uncheck the Torque Low Pass Filter box (that is checked by default).

| Stop             | Perform Tune Start Stop                    | Tune Control Loop by Measuring Load Character<br>Application<br>Type: | General<br>Motor                                      |
|------------------|--|---|---|
| Stop             |  |   | 1   |
| Stop             | Start Stop                                 |   | Model   |
|                  | Tune Status:                               | Loop<br>Response: Medium V  | Analyzer<br>Motor Feedback<br>Scaling                 |
| ed               | Loop Parameters Tuned                      | Load Rigid ~  | Hookup Tests  |
| Current Tuned Un | Name Curre                                 |   | ····· Polarity  |
| dwidth Hz        | PositionLoopBandwidth                      | Customize Gains to Tune   | Autotune  |
| Band Hz          | PositionIntegratorBand                     | Position Integrator Bandwidth   | E- Load   |
| dwidth Hz        | VelocityLoopBandwidth                      | Velocity Integrator Bandwidth   | Backlash  |
| nsation          | Advanced Compensation                      |   | Compliance  |
| ed               | Load Parameters Tuned                      | Velocity Feedforward  | Friction  |
| Current Tuned Un |  | Acceleration Feedforward  | Observer  |
|                  |  | Terrus Low Page Filter  |   |
| ation r          | MaximumAcceleration<br>MaximumDeceleration | Torque Low Pass Filter  | Position Loop     Velocity Loop     Acceleration Loop |

- 3. Click the Load category in the Axis Properties dialog box.
  - a. Check Use Load Ratio.
  - b. Set the Load Ratio = 0.

| 🍄 Axis Properties - Axis   | _1   |   |  |        |
|--|--|---|--|--------|
| Categories:  |  |   |  |        |
| ····· General  | Characteristics of Motor Load  |   |  |        |
| Motor     Model     Madyzer     Motor Feedback     Scaling     Hookup Tests     Polanty     Autotune     Loss     Loss | Load Inertia/Mass<br>Load Coupling:<br>☑ Use Load Ratio<br>Load Ratio:<br>Motor Inertia:<br>Total Inertia: | Rigid            0.0         0.000011           0.000011         0.000011 | Load Inertia/Motor Inertia<br>Kg m^2<br>Kg m^2 |        |
| 4.   | Click the Observer   | category in t   | he Axis Properties dialo                       | g box. |

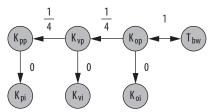
Click the Observer category in the Axis Properties dialog box.

a. Verify that Load Observer with Velocity Estimate appears in the Configuration field.

Load Observer is not available for Torque Loop control.

| 🗞 Axis Properties - Axis_1 📃 💷  | × |
|---|---|
| Categories:<br>General<br>Model<br>Model<br>Model<br>Model<br>Configuration:<br>Load Observer with Velocity Estimate  Parameters<br>Bandwidth:<br>296.33984<br>Hetz<br>Integrator Bandwidth:<br>0.0<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz<br>Hetz |   |
|   |   |

- b. Click Apply and click Yes to update all dependent attributes.
- c. The Load Observer Bandwidth and other gains are set automatically.



5. Click the Compliance category in the Axis Properties dialog box.

| Axis Properties - Axis_1                       |                                     |        |            |       |        |               | - 0 |
|--|-------------------------------------|--------|------------|-------|--------|---------------|-----|
| tegories:                                      |                                     |        |            |       |        |               |     |
| ····· General                                  | Compliance Compensation             |        |            |       |        |               |     |
| - Motor  |                                     |        |            |       |        |               |     |
| Model  | Torque Low Pass Filter Bandwidth:   | 0.0    |            | Hertz |        |               |     |
| Analyzer                                       | Torque Notch Filter Frequency:      | 0.0    |            | Hertz |        |               |     |
| Motor Feedback                                 |                                     |        |            |       |        |               |     |
| Scaling  | Torque Lag Filter Gain:             | 1.0    |            |       |        |               |     |
| Hookup Tests                                   | Torque Lag Filter Bandwidth:        | 0.0    |            | Hertz |        |               |     |
| Polarity                                       |                                     |        |            |       |        |               |     |
| Autotune                                       |                                     |        |            |       |        |               |     |
| 🖻 – Load                                       | Adaptive Tuning                     |        | · ·        |       |        |               |     |
| Backlash                                       | Adaptive Tuning Configuration:      |        | Tracking N | otch  | $\sim$ |               |     |
| Compliance<br>Friction                         | Torque Notch Filter High Frequency  | Limit: | 2000.0     |       |        | Hertz         |     |
| Observer                                       | Torque Notch Filter Low Frequency   | Limit: | 296.33984  |       |        | Hertz         |     |
| Position Loop                                  | Torque Notch Filter Tuning Threshol | ld:    | 5.0        |       |        | % Motor Rated |     |
| ····· Velocity Loop<br>····· Acceleration Loop |                                     |        |            |       |        |               |     |

d. Click Apply.

6. Enable the iTRAK 5730 system for a few seconds with an MSO instruction or motion direct command, followed by an MSF instruction or motion direct command, to make sure that no audible squealing noise is present.

IMPORTANTIf an audible squealing noise is heard, go to Axis Properties > Load ><br/>Compliance category and set the Torque Notch Filter Frequency field<br/>(Hz) to remove the noise. See Motion System Tuning Application<br/>Techniques, publication MOTION-ATOO5 (Compensating for High<br/>Frequency Resonances), for information on how to set the Torque<br/>Notch Filter Frequency field.

7. Repeat Tune the Axes with Load Observer for each axis.

# **Troubleshoot the iTRAK 5730 System**

This chapter provides troubleshooting information for your iTRAK® 5730 system.

| Торіс   | Page |
|---|------|
| Safety Precautions                              |      |
| Interpret Fault Codes                           | 123  |
| Interpret Status Indicators                     | 126  |
| Axis Troubleshooting                            |      |
| Logix 5000 Controller and iTRAK System Behavior |      |

## **Safety Precautions**

Observe the following safety precautions when troubleshooting your iTRAK 5730 system.



**ATTENTION:** Capacitors on the DC bus can retain hazardous voltages after input power has been removed. Before working on the system, measure the DC bus voltage to verify it has reached a safe level or wait the full time interval as indicated in the warning on the front of the module. Failure to observe this precaution could result in severe bodily injury or loss of life.



**ATTENTION:** Do not attempt to defeat or override the module fault circuits. You must determine the cause of a fault and correct it before you attempt to operate the system. Failure to correct the fault could result in personal injury and/or damage to equipment as a result of uncontrolled machine operation.



**ATTENTION:** Provide an earth ground for test equipment (oscilloscope) used in troubleshooting. Failure to ground the test equipment could result in personal injury.

## **Interpret Fault Codes**

See the tables in this section to identify faults, potential causes, and the appropriate actions to resolve the fault. If the fault persists after attempting to troubleshoot the system, contact your Rockwell Automation<sup>®</sup> sales representative for further assistance.



Knowledgebase Answer ID <u>1092901</u> iTRAK 5730 System Fault Codes has the fault codes. Download the spreadsheet from this public article. You might be asked to log in to your Rockwell Automation web account, or create an account if you do not have one. You do not need a support contract to access the article.

### **Fault Code Overview**

The fault code tables are designed to help you determine the source of the fault or exception. When a fault condition is detected, the motor section or mover performs the appropriate fault action and the fault is added to a persistent fault log (along with diagnostics data). If a fault condition is still active following a Fault Reset service, the fault is again written to the fault log.

However, there can be a delay before the fault is posted again. In a Studio 5000 Logix Designer® application (also called the Studio 5000® application), this delay results as the AxisFault tag on the axis being cleared until the fault is posted again. During this delay, the AxisState tag continues to indicate that the axis is faulted. Use the AxisState tag on the axis object only to determine if an axis is faulted.

Although software overtravel fault codes do not exist, software overtravel detection for the AXIS\_CIP\_DRIVE axis type is determined in the Logix 5000<sup>®</sup> controller. For more information, see Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP<sup>™</sup> Network Reference Manual, publication <u>MOTION-RM003</u>.

The iTRAK 5730 maintains a fault log of the last 128 faults. The fault log includes time stamps and is stored in persistent memory. However, the fault log cannot be cleared on the module.

| Fault Code Type <sup>(1) (2)</sup> | Description   |  |
|------------------------------------|---|--|
| FLT Sxx                            | Standard runtime axis exceptions. The exception can apply to an individual axis or to all axes.                                 |  |
| FLT Mxx                            | Manufacturer-specific runtime axis exception. The exception can apply to an individual axis or to all axes.                     |  |
| INIT FLT Sxx                       | Exceptions that prevent normal operation and occur during the initialization process.   |  |
| INIT FLT Mxx                       |   |  |
| NODE FLT <i>xx</i>                 | Exceptions that can prevent normal operation and apply to the entire module and affect all axes.                                |  |
| NODE ALARM <i>xx</i>               | Exceptions that can prevent normal operation, but do not result in any action other than reporting the alarm to the controller. |  |
| INHIBIT Sxx                        | Conditions that prevent normal operation and indicate that the axis is prevented from   |  |
| INHIBIT Mxx                        | being enabled.  |  |
| ALARM Sxx                          | An underlying exception condition that does not result in any action other than reporting                                       |  |
| ALARM Mxx                          | the alarm to the controller.  |  |
| SAFE FLT <i>xx</i>                 | Exception that is generated by a fault condition detected in the safety function.   |  |

Table 15 - Fault Code Summary

(1) Sxx refers to Standard exceptions.

(2) Mxx refers to Manufacturer-specific exceptions.



Fault codes triggered by conditions that fall outside factory set limits are identified by FL at the end of the display message. For example, FLT S07 – MTR OVERLOAD FL. Fault codes triggered by conditions that fall outside user set limits are identified by UL at the end of the display message. For example, FLT S08 – MTR OVERLOAD UL.

### **Mover Numbers in Fault Codes**

When a fault about a mover appears, the fault text includes the mover number as the sub code at the end of the fault text. Movers are numbered based on which option you select for the Mover Axis Assignment Sequence configuration parameter, as described on <u>page 99...page 101</u>.

### **Motor Module Numbers in Fault Codes**

In addition to the motor module name and IP address, the motor module is also given a number. You do not enter this number; it is assigned automatically based on the position of the motor module relative to the power and control input connector module. The first motor module that is connected to the power and control input connector module is numbered 0, the next motor module 1, and so on. When a fault about a motor module appears, the fault text includes the motor module number as the sub code at the end of the fault text. For example, the fault text "INIT FLT 28 - Sub Code 1" means that the second motor module from the power and control input connector module is affected.

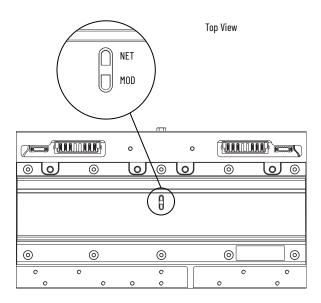
## **Interpret Status Indicators**

Use the information in this section to identify the status of the motor and connector modules by using the status indicators.

**IMPORTANT** Status indicators are not reliable for safety functions. Use status indicators only for general diagnostics during commissioning or troubleshooting. Do not attempt to use status indicators to determine operational status.

## **Motor Module Status Indicators**

The iTRAK 5730 motor modules contain the following status indicators.



Straight Motor Module (Catalog Number 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2) Shown.

| Condition          | Status  |
|--------------------|---|
| Steady Off         | There is no power applied to the motor module section or the IP address is not configured.  |
| Flashing Green     | No Motion or Safety connection is established, but the motor module section has obtained an IP address.   |
| Steady Green       | A Motion or Safety connection is established and no timeout has occurred. Normal operation.   |
| Flashing Red       | Connection timeout. One or more of the connections, for which this motor module section is the target, has timed out.   |
| Steady Red         | Duplicate IP address. The IP address that is specified is already in use.   |
| Flashing Green/Red | Self-test. The motor module section performs a self-test during powerup. Once the self-<br>test is complete, the Flashing Green/Red condition continues if the motor module section<br>is processing a safety device ID proposal. |

| Condition Status   |  |
|--------------------|--|
| Steady Off         | There is no power applied to the motor module section.   |
| Steady Green       | The motor module section is operational. No faults or failures.  |
| Flashing Green     | Standby (motor module section not configured), Precharge (motor module section is configured), or one or more axes are inhibited or shut down.   |
| Flashing Red       | Major recoverable fault. The motor module section detected a recoverable fault. For example, an incorrect or inconsistent configuration occurred.  |
| Steady Red         | Major fault. The motor module section detected a nonrecoverable fault.   |
| Flashing Green/Red | Self-test. The motor module section performs a self-test during powerup. Once the self-<br>test is complete, the Flashing Green/Red condition continues if the motor module section<br>is waiting for integrated STO safety configuration. |

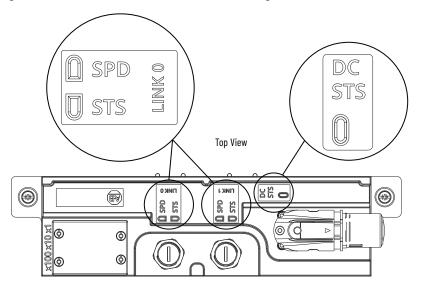
### Table 17 - Module (MOD) Status Indicator Descriptions

### Table 18 - Network (NET) and Module (MOD) Combined Status Indicator Descriptions

| Condition  | Status   |
|--|--|
| NET and MOD<br>alternately Flashing<br>Red                 | A firmware update is in progress. Control power must NOT be removed during this condition. As different segments of the section complete the firmware update the status indicators can momentarily exit the firmware update indication. Be sure that the non-firmware update condition is maintained for 1 minute before removing control power. |
| MOD Flashing Red<br>alternating with NET<br>Flashing Green | A firmware update is required.   |

### **Connector Module Status Indicators**

The iTRAK 5730 power and control input and power input with control passthrough connector modules contain the following status indicators.



Power and Control Input Connector Module (Catalog Number 2198T-CT-CP) Shown.

### Table 19 - LINK 0/1 Ethernet Link Speed (SPD) Status Indicator Descriptions <sup>(1)</sup>

| Condition        | Status                              |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| Steady Off       | No connection or less than 100 Mbit |
| Steady On Yellow | 100 Mbit                            |

(1) Present on the power and control (2198T-CT-CP) connector module only.

#### Table 20 - LINK 0/1 Ethernet Link/Activity (STS) Status Indicator Descriptions <sup>(1)</sup>

| Condition       | Status           |
|-----------------|------------------|
| Steady Off      | No link          |
| Steady On Green | Link established |
| Flashing Green  | Network activity |

(1) Present on the power and control (2198T-CT-CP) connector module only.

#### Table 21 - DC Power (DC STS) Status Indicator Descriptions (1)

| Condition Status |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|------------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Steady Off       | 24V DC control power is off and DC bus voltage is unknown          |  |  |  |  |  |
| Steady On Green  | 24V DC control power is present and the DC bus voltage is < 50V DC |  |  |  |  |  |
| Steady On Amber  | 24V DC control power is present and the DC bus voltage is > 50V DC |  |  |  |  |  |

(1) Present on the power and control (2198T-CT-CP) and power with control pass-through (2198T-CT-P) connector modules only.



**SHOCK HAZARD:** To avoid a shock hazard or personal injury, verify that all power has been removed before proceeding with installation or maintenance tasks. The motor modules and Kinetix<sup>®</sup> 5700 iTRAK power supply require 5 minutes to discharge before you handle wire and cable connections.

## **Axis Troubleshooting**

These conditions do not always result in a fault code, but can require troubleshooting to improve iTRAK 5730 performance.

#### Condition **Potential Cause Possible Resolution** Unintentionally in Torque mode. Check to see what primary operation mode was programmed. Run Tune in the Studio 5000 application. Motor tuning limits are set too high. Position loop gain or position controller accel/decel rate is Run Tune in the Studio 5000 application. improperly set. Improper grounding or shielding techniques are causing noise to Axis or system is unstable be transmitted into the position feedback interface, causing Check wiring and ground. erratic axis movement. Notch filter or output filter can be required (see the Axis Properties dialog box, Compliance tab in the Studio 5000 Mechanical resonance. application). Enable adaptive tuning. See <u>Tune the Axes</u> on page <u>120</u> for more notch filter information. Torque Limit limits are set too low. Verify that torgue limits are set properly. Check motor size versus application need. The system inertia is excessive. Review servo system sizing. You cannot obtain the motor The system friction torque is excessive. Check motor size versus application need. acceleration/deceleration that Check motor size versus application need. Available current is insufficient to supply the correct accel/decel you want Review servo system sizing. rate. Acceleration limit is incorrect. Verify limit settings and correct them, as necessary. Velocity Limit limits are incorrect. Verify limit settings and correct them, as necessary. Disable the axis, wait the configured stopping time, and enable the The axis cannot be enabled until stopping time has expired. axis. Motor does not respond to a The motor module has malfunctioned. Repair or replace the motor module. command Primary operation mode is set incorrectly. Check to see what primary operation mode was programmed. Velocity or torque limits are set incorrectly. Check and properly set the limits. The motor module connections are loose or open. Check motor module connections. Foreign matter is lodged in the motor. Remove foreign matter. Verify the servo system sizing. The motor load is excessive. No movement The mover bearings are worn. Replace the mover for repair. Check brake wiring and function. The motor brake is engaged (if supplied). Return the motor for repair. Change the command profile to reduce accel/decel or increase The duty cycle is excessive. time. Motor overheating The mover is partially demagnetized causing excessive motor Return the mover for repair. current. Motor tuning limits are set too high. Run Tune in the Studio 5000 application. · Remove the loose parts. Return motor for repair. Loose parts are present in the mover or section. Replace motor module. There is insufficient lubrication on the track. Adjust lubrication application rate or refill lubrication reservoirs. There is foreign debris on the rails. Clean all rail surfaces and reapply lubricant. Abnormal noise The rails are misaligned. Realign all rails at transitions. Replace damaged rails. The rail system is worn. A through bolt or coupling is loose. Tighten bolts. The mover bearings are worn. Return the mover for repair. Notch filter can be required (refer to Axis Properties dialog box, Mechanical resonance. Compliance tab in the Studio 5000 application). Change the Track Stop exception Action setting to Ignore or Alarm. Changing the Action setting to Ignore or Alarm allows axes to continue to run when another axis on the track experiences a Undesired FLT M32 - TRACK STOP The Track Stop exception is configured with an exception Action of major fault. Setting the Action to Alarm allows the Logix controller major faults when another axis Disable or Shutdown. program to respond when a fault occurs. A possible response is to on the track experiences a fault bring other axes to a controlled stop at specific locations. However, the ability to perform the desired response can be affected by the other faulted axis.

#### Table 22 - Axis Troubleshooting

| Condition                                  | Potential Cause   | Possible Resolution  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Uneveneeted FLT M77                        | A mover position magnet assembly is missing or damaged. | Inspect the movers for a missing or damaged position magnet.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Unexpected FLT M33 - LOST<br>MOVER         | Magnetic interference has occurred.                     | Remove any foreign materials that can have interfered with the mover position-magnets magnetic field.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Unexpected FLT M34 -<br>UNASSOCIATED MOVER | There are stray magnetic fields near the track.         | Remove any magnetized or unmagnetized ferrous materials furthe<br>away from the movers and track system. Maintain a minimum<br>distance of 50 mm (2.0 in.) away from the movers for any installed<br>ferromagnetic material. |  |  |  |  |  |  |

#### Table 22 - Axis Troubleshooting (Continued)

## Logix 5000 Controller and iTRAK System Behavior

By using the Studio 5000 application, you can configure how the iTRAK 5730 system responds when a module fault/exception occurs.



The INIT FLT xxx faults are always generated after powerup, but before the axis is enabled, so the stopping behavior does not apply.

NODE ALARM xxx faults do not apply because they do not trigger stopping behavior.

The iTRAK 5730 motor sections and movers support fault actions for Ignore, Alarm, Minor Fault, and Major Fault as defined in <u>Table 23</u>. They also support the configurable stopping actions as defined in the <u>Table 25</u> on page <u>132</u>.

| Exception Action Definition |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----------------------------|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Ignore                      | The motor section or mover completely ignores the exception condition. For some exceptions that are fundamental to the operation of the planner, Ignore is not an available option.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Alarm                       | The motor section or mover sets the associated bit in the Motion Alarm Status word, but does not otherwise affect axis behavior. Like Ignore, if the exception is so fundamental to the motor section or mover, Alarm is not an available option. When an exception action is set to Alarm, the Alarm goes away by itself when the exceptional condition has cleared. |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Minor Fault                 | The motor section or mover latches the exception condition, but does not execute any exception action.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Major Fault                 | The motor section or mover latches the exception condition and executes the configured exception action.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

You can configure exception behavior in the Studio 5000 application from the Axis Properties dialog box, Actions category. These controller exception actions are mapped to the motor section or mover exception actions.

| <b>Exception Action</b>  | Definition  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Ignore   | The controller completely ignores the exception condition. For some exceptions that ar fundamental to the operation of the planner, Ignore is not an available option.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Alarm  | The controller sets the associated bit in the Motion Alarm Status word, but does not otherwise affect axis behavior. Like Ignore, if the exception is so fundamental to the axis, Alarm is not an available option. When an exception action is set to Alarm, the Alarm goes away by itself when the exceptional condition has cleared.   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Fault Status Only instructs the controller to set the associated bit in the<br>Fault Status word, but does not otherwise affect axis behavior. However, unlike Alar<br>explicit Fault Reset is required to clear the fault once the exceptional condition has<br>cleared. Like Ignore and Alarm, if the exception is so fundamental to the axis, Fault<br>Only is not an available option. |   |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Stop Planner   | The controller sets the associated bit in the Motion Fault Status word and instructs the Motion Planner to perform a controlled stop of all planned motion at the configured maximum deceleration rate. An explicit Fault Reset is required to clear the fault once the exceptional condition has cleared. If the exception is so fundamental to the axis, Stop Planner is not an available option. |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Disable  | When the exception occurs, the associated bit in the Fault Status word is set and the axis comes to a stop by using the stopping action that is defined by the axis for the particular exception that occurred. If there is a fault, there is no controller-based configuration to specify what the stopping action is. The stopping action is device-dependent.                                    |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Shutdown   | When the exception occurs, the axis comes to a stop by using the stopping action defined by the axis (as in Stop Drive) and the power module is disabled. An explicit Shutdown Reset is required to restore the axis to operation.  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

## **iTRAK 5730 Power Supply Behavior**

See the iTRAK 5730 Power Supply Behavior section in Chapter 7 of the Kinetix 5700 Servo Drive User Manual, publication <u>2198-UM002</u>, for details.

## iTRAK 5730 Motor Module and Mover Behavior

For the iTRAK 5730 motor modules and movers, only selected exceptions are configurable. <u>Table 25</u> provides a list and descriptions of the available configurable stopping actions.

| <b>Stopping Action</b>              | Description   |  |
|-------------------------------------|---------------|--|
| Current Decel & Hold <sup>(1)</sup> | Most control  | The best available stopping action is the one that maintains the   |
| Current Decel & Disable             | Less control  | most control over the motor. However, not all faults support every |
| Disable & Coast                     | Least control | stopping action.   |

(1) This stop action is support by the movers only.

When a section axis is configured for Current Decel & Disable, the power structure remains enabled until the configured Stopping Time Limit expires. The configured Stopping Time Limit provides time for the Logix controller program to bring the movers to a controlled stop. The section does not initiate any stopping actions on mover axes during the configured Stopping Time Limit.

<u>Table 26</u> provides a list and description of the available standard and safety actions and behaviors. Actions define the motor section or mover behavior in response to specific conditions. The Actions category includes Standard Actions and Safety Actions. See <u>Standard Actions</u> and <u>Safety Actions on</u> page 133 for detailed descriptions of these actions.

| Action Category | Action Name                                  | Action Trigger Condition   | Available Actions   |  |  |  |
|-----------------|--|--|---|--|--|--|
| Standard        | Disable (MSF) Stopping Action                | Execution of an MSF motion instruction.  | <ul> <li>Current Decel &amp; Hold <sup>(1)</sup></li> <li>Current Decel &amp; Disable</li> <li>Disable &amp; Coast</li> </ul> |  |  |  |
|                 | Connection Loss Stopping Action              | Loss of the motion connection (for example, inhibiting the module or a network cable disconnect).  | <ul><li>Current Decel &amp; Disable</li><li>Disable &amp; Coast</li></ul>   |  |  |  |
|                 | Motor Overload Action <sup>(2)</sup>         | Receiving MTR OVERLOAD fault.  | <ul><li>Current Foldback</li><li>None</li></ul>   |  |  |  |
|                 | Inverter Overload Action <sup>(2)</sup>      | Receiving INV OVERLOAD fault.  | <ul><li>Current Foldback</li><li>None</li></ul>   |  |  |  |
| Safety          | Safe Torque Off Action <sup>(2)</sup>        | Transition from logic 0 to 1 of the SafeTorqueOffActiveStatus axis tag, which indicates a Safe Torque Off (STO) action was commanded.  | <ul> <li>Current Decel &amp; Disable</li> <li>Disable &amp; Coast</li> </ul>  |  |  |  |
|                 | Safe Torque Off Action Source <sup>(2)</sup> | Determines whether the connected motor module section or controller initiates the stopping sequence in response to a Safe Torque Off (STO) active condition in the Axis safety status attribute. | <ul><li>Connected Drive</li><li>Running Controller</li></ul>  |  |  |  |

#### Table 26 - Actions Definitions

(1) This action is supported by the movers only.

(2) This action is supported by the motor sections only.

#### **Standard Actions**

When a controller connection loss (NODE FLT 06) occurs, it is possible that other node faults can occur first, triggering a fault action of Current Decel & Disable. Without knowing if NODE FLT 06 will occur first on a connection loss fault, we recommend that you do not change the default connection loss setting of Current Decel & Disable.



Use DLR ring topology (see <u>Device Level Ring Topology</u> on page <u>30</u>) for applications where the possibility of connection loss must be minimized.

#### Safety Actions

When the Safe Torque Off Action Source is set to "Running Controller," the connected motor module does not perform any stopping actions in response to a STO active condition. You must configure your Logix program to perform the desired stopping action in response to a STO active condition. A section axis configured to "Disable" remains enabled until the configured STO Delay expires and the iTRAK 5730 system enters the safe state.

When the Safe Torque Off Action Source is set to "Connected Drive," the connected motor module performs the configured Safe Torque Off Action. For an iTRAK 5730 motor module section, a "Current Decel & Disable" stopping action only maintains the enabled state of the section axis for the configured stopping time limit before activating the brake control bit and disabling the section axis. The motor module section does not initiate any action on movers.

<u>Table 27</u>, <u>Table 28 on page 134</u>, and <u>Table 30 on page 135</u> provide the controlling attribute for programmable fault actions.

|                               |   |   | ctio         | n Ax  | is                 |                    |   | Mover Axis |         |       |                    |                    |   |
|-------------------------------|---|---|--------------|-------|--------------------|--------------------|---|------------|---------|-------|--------------------|--------------------|---|
|                               |   |   | Fault Action |       |                    |                    | Best Available                                  |            | Fault A |       | ctio               | n                  | Best Available                                  |
| Exception Fault Code          | Exception Text                                |   | lanore       | Alarm | <b>Minor Fault</b> | <b>Major Fault</b> | Stopping Action<br>(applies to major<br>faults) | Supported  | lgnore  | Alarm | <b>Minor Fault</b> | <b>Major Fault</b> | Stopping Action<br>(applies to major<br>faults) |
| FLT SO3 – MTR OVERSPEED FL    | Motor Overspeed Factory Limit Fault           | - | -            | -     | -                  | -                  |   | χ          | -       | -     | -                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   |
| FLT SO4 – MTR OVERSPEED UL    | Motor Overspeed User Limit Fault              | - | -            | -     | -                  | -                  | Current Decel/Hold                              | χ          | χ       | Х     | Х                  | Х                  |   |
| FLT SO5 – MTR OVERTEMP FL     | Motor Overtemperature Factory Limit Fault     | Х | -            | -     | -                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   | -          | -       | -     | -                  | -                  |   |
| FLT SO7 – MTR OVERLOAD FL     | Motor Thermal Overload Factory Limit Fault    | Х | -            | -     | -                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   | -          | -       | -     | -                  | -                  |   |
| FLT SO8 – MTR OVERLOAD UL     | Motor Thermal OverLoad User Limit Fault       | Х | Х            | Х     | χ                  | Х                  | Current Decel/Hold                              | -          | -       | -     | -                  | -                  |   |
| FLT SO9 – MTR PHASE LOSS      | Motor Phase Loss <sup>(1)</sup>               | - | -            | -     | -                  | -                  |   | χ          | -       | -     | _                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   |
| FLT S10 – INV OVERCURRENT     | Inverter Overcurrent Fault                    | Х | -            | -     | -                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   | -          | -       | -     | -                  | -                  |   |
| FLT S11 – INV OVERTEMP FL     | Inverter Overtemperature Factory Limit Fault  | Х | -            | -     | -                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   | -          | -       | -     | -                  | _                  |   |
| FLT S13 – INV OVERLOAD FL     | Inverter Thermal Overload Factory Limit Fault | Х | -            | -     | -                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   | -          | -       | -     | -                  | -                  |   |
| FLT S14 – INV OVERLOAD UL     | Inverter Thermal Overload User Limit Fault    | Х | Х            | Х     | Х                  | Х                  | Current Decel/Hold                              |            | -       | -     | _                  | -                  |   |
| FLT S22 - AC POWER LOSS       | Converter AC Power Loss Fault                 | Х | Х            | Х     | Х                  | -                  | Current Decel/Disable                           | Х          | Х       | Х     | Х                  | Х                  | Current Decel/<br>Disable                       |
| FLT S33 – BUS UNDERVOLT FL    | Bus Undervoltage Factory Limit Fault          | Х | -            | _     | -                  | Х                  | Current Decel/Disable                           | I          | -       | -     | Ι                  |                    |   |
| FLT S34 – BUS UNDERVOLT UL    | Bus Undervoltage User Limit Fault             | Х | Х            | Х     | χ                  | Х                  | Current Decel/Disable                           | -          | -       | -     | -                  | -                  |   |
| FLT S35 – BUS OVERVOLT FL     | Bus Overvoltage Factory Limit Fault           | Х | -            | -     | -                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   | -          | -       | -     | -                  | -                  |   |
| FLT S37 – BUS POWER LOSS      | Bus Power Loss                                | Х | Х            | Х     | Х                  | Х                  | Current Decel/Disable                           | I          | -       | -     | Ι                  |                    |   |
| FLT S40 – BUS POWER SHARING   | Bus Power Sharing Fault                       | Х | Х            | Х     | Х                  | Х                  | Current Decel/Disable                           | Х          | χ       | Х     | Х                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   |
| FLT S45 – FDBK COMM FL        | Motor Feedback Data Loss Factory Limit Fault  | Х | -            | -     | -                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   | χ          | -       | -     | -                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   |
| FLT S46 – FDBK COMM UL        | Motor Feedback Data Loss User Limit Fault     | Х | Х            | Х     | Х                  | Х                  | Current Decel/Disable                           | I          | -       | -     | Ι                  |                    |   |
| FLT S47 – FDBK DEVICE FAILURE | Feedback Device Failure                       | Х | -            | -     | -                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   | I          | -       | -     | Ι                  |                    |   |
| FLT S54 – POSN ERROR          | Excessive Position Error Fault                | - | -            | -     | -                  | -                  |   | χ          | χ       | Х     | Х                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   |
| FLT S55 – VEL ERROR           | Excessive Velocity Error Fault                | - | -            | -     | -                  | -                  |   | Х          | Х       | Х     | Х                  | Х                  | Disable/Coast                                   |
| FLT S56 – OVERTORQUE LIMIT    | Overtorque Limit Fault                        | - | _            | _     | -                  | -                  |   | χ          | Х       | Х     | Х                  | Х                  | Current Decel/<br>Hold                          |
| FLT S57 – UNDERTORQUE LIMIT   | Undertorque Limit Fault                       | - | _            | _     | -                  | _                  |   | Х          | Х       | Х     | Х                  | Х                  | Current Decel/<br>Hold                          |

#### Table 27 - Motor Section and Mover Fault Behavior, FLT Sxx Fault Codes

(1) The Motor Phase Loss Fault occurs when an enabled mover is on a motor module that becomes disabled or travels onto an already disabled motor module.

|                              |                                   | Sec       | ection Axis |       |                    |             | Mover Axis                                      |           |              |       |                    |     |   |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------|-------------|-------|--------------------|-------------|---|-----------|--------------|-------|--------------------|-----|---|
|                              |                                   |           | Fault Actio |       |                    | on          | Best Available                                  |           | Fault Action |       |                    | n   | Best Available                                  |
| Exception Fault Code         | Exception Text                    | Supported | lgnore      | Alarm | <b>Minor Fault</b> | Major Fault | Stopping Action<br>(applies to major<br>faults) | Supported | lgnore       | Alarm | <b>Minor Fault</b> | ĽĽ. | Stopping Action<br>(applies to major<br>faults) |
| FLT M26 – RUNTIME ERROR      | Runtime Error                     | Х         | -           | I     | -                  | Х           | Disable/Coast                                   | Х         | -            | -     | -                  | Х   | Disable/Coast                                   |
| FLT M27 - BACKPLANE COMM     | Backplane Communication Error     | Х         | -           | -     | -                  | Х           | Disable/Coast                                   | Х         | -            | -     | -                  | χ   | Disable/Coast                                   |
| FLT M28 – SAFETY COMM        | Safety Module Communication Error | Х         | -           | -     | -                  | Х           | Disable/Coast                                   | -         | -            | -     | -                  | -   |   |
| FLT M32 - TRACK STOP         | Track Stop <sup>(1)</sup>         | Х         | Х           | Х     | Х                  | Х           | Current Decel/Disable                           | Х         | Х            | Х     | Х                  | Х   | Current Decel/<br>Disable                       |
| FLT M33 - LOST MOVER         | Lost Mover Association            | -         | -           | -     | -                  | -           |   | Х         | -            | -     | -                  | χ   | Disable/Coast                                   |
| FLT M34 - UNASSOCIATED MOVER | Unassociated Mover                | Х         | -           |       | —                  | Х           | Disable/Coast                                   | -         | -            | -     | -                  | -   |   |

(1) Occurs on all axes when a major fault occurs on any axis. The subcode indicates the slot number of the section requesting the stop. Check all axes on that section to identify the primary fault.

#### Table 29 - Motor Section and Mover Fault Behavior, INIT FLT Mxx Fault Codes

| Exception Fault Code                                    | tion Fault Code Exception Text Description      |  | Section<br>Axis | Mover<br>Axis |
|---|---|--|-----------------|---------------|
| INIT FLT M14 - SAFETY FIRMWARE                          | Invalid Safety Firmware                         | The loaded Safety firmware is not compatible with the motor module firmware. See <u>Appendix A on page 201</u> for instructions on how to upgrade the iTRAK 5730 firmware.   | Х               | -             |
| INIT FLT M20 - UNKNOWN MODULE                           | Unknown Module Fault                            | The product code of the power board is invalid.  | Х               | Х             |
| INIT FLT M21 - FACTORY CONFIG nn                        | Factory Configuration Error                     | Factory configuration data is missing or invalid.  | Х               | Х             |
| INIT FLT M22 - ILLEGAL ADDRESS                          | Illegal IP Address                              | The IP address rotary switches on the power and control input<br>connector module are set to an invalid value. See <u>EtherNet/IP</u><br><u>Address Rotary Switches on page 75</u> for details on valid switch<br>settings.  | Х               | _             |
| INIT FLT M25 - MOVER AXIS<br>Assignment error <i>nn</i> | Mover-Axis Assignment Error                     | An error occurred when the movers were assigned to the mover<br>axes.<br>Subcodes:<br>O1: Reference Mover not Found<br>O2: Unexpected Reference Mover Found<br>O3: Detected Fewer Movers than Configured<br>O4: Detected More Movers than Configured<br>O5: Inconsistent Mover Seq<br>O6: Movers in Motion<br>O7: Track Max Mover Count Exceeded | X               | x             |
| INIT FLT M26 - TRACK BACKPLANE<br>Communication nn      | Backplane Communication Initialization<br>Error | An error occurred while establishing backplane communication.<br>Subcodes:<br>02: Too Many Sections on the Backplane<br>03: Slot Assignment Failure<br>04: Track Type Failure  | Х               | x             |
| INIT FLT M27 - UNASSOCIATED<br>Section Axis             | Unassociated Section Axis                       | The motor module section that is associated with this mover axis has detected that no axis instance has been associated with Axis 1 (section axis). All iTRAK 5730 motor module sections must have an associated section axis.   | _               | х             |
| INIT FLT M28 - TRACK<br>Configuration                   | Track Configuration Error                       | A motor module section has not provided its axis and mover<br>information to the rest of the track when expected. Possible causes<br>of this occurrence include that the module is inhibited or has no<br>axes associated.   | Х               | х             |

|                                       | Section Axis                     |       |                    |                    | Mover Axis                                      |           |   |       |                    |             |   |   |   |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-------|--------------------|--------------------|---|-----------|---|-------|--------------------|-------------|---|---|---|
|                                       |                                  |       | Fa                 | ult /              | Acti  |           | Best Available  |       | Fault Action       |             |   | n | Best Available  |
| Exception Fault Code Exception Text   |                                  | Alarm | <b>Minor Fault</b> | <b>Major Fault</b> | Stopping Action<br>(applies to major<br>faults) | Supported | lgnore  | Alarm | <b>Minor Fault</b> | Major Fault | Stopping Action<br>(applies to major<br>faults) |   |   |
| NODE FLT 01 – LATE CTRL UPDATE        | Control Connection Update Fault  | Х     | -                  | -                  | -   | Х         | Current Decel/Disable   | Х     | -                  | -           | -   | Х | Current Decel/<br>Disable   |
| NODE FLT 02 - PROC WATCHDOG           | Processor Watchdog Fault         | χ     | —                  | -                  | -   | Х         | Disable/Coast   | Х     | -                  | -           | -   | Х | Disable/Coast   |
| NODE FLT 03 – HARDWARE                | Hardware Fault                   | Х     | -                  | -                  | -   | Х         | Disable/Coast   | Х     | -                  | -           | -   | Х | Disable/Coast   |
| NODE FLT 04 - DATA FORMAT ERROR       | Data Format Error Fault          | Х     | -                  | -                  | -   | Х         | Disable/Coast   | Х     | -                  | -           | -   | Х | Disable/Coast   |
| NODE FLT 05 – CLOCK SKEW FLT          | Clock Skew Fault                 | Х     | -                  | -                  | -   | Х         | Current Decel/Disable   | Х     | -                  | -           | -   | χ | Disable/Coast   |
| NODE FLT 06 - LOST CTRL CONN          | Lost Controller Connection Fault | Х     | _                  | _                  | _   | x         | Programmable per<br>Connection Loss<br>Stopping Action (see<br><u>Table 26 on page 132</u> ). | х     | _                  | _           | _   | х | Programmable per<br>Connection Loss<br>Stopping Action<br>(see <u>Table 26 on</u><br><u>page 132</u> ). |
| NODE FLT 07 – CLOCK SYNC              | Clock Sync Fault                 | Х     | -                  |                    | _   | Х         | Current Decel/Disable   | Х     | -                  | -           | -   | Х | Current Decel/<br>Disable   |
| NODE FLT 09 – DUPLICATE IP<br>Address | Duplicate IP Address Fault       | χ     | -                  | _                  | -   | Х         | Disable/Coast   | Х     | -                  | -           | -   | Х | Disable/Coast   |

#### Table 30 - Motor Section and Mover Fault Behavior, NODE FLT Fault Codes

## Notes:

# **Maintenance**

This chapter contains information on how to maintain your iTRAK<sup>®</sup> 5730 system and install or replace components.

| Торіс                         | Page |
|-------------------------------|------|
| Before You Begin              | 137  |
| Preventive Maintenance        | 137  |
| Install or Replace Components | 138  |
| Lubrication                   | 166  |

## **Before You Begin**

Before you attempt maintenance on the system, complete these tasks.

- Make sure that the movers are motionless.
- Disconnect electrical power to the system by using the master switch and lockout.

## **Preventive Maintenance**

To prolong the life of your iTRAK 5730 system, clean the rail system and components. The frequency at which you clean the components depends on the machine usage, the environment in which they are used, and exposure to contaminants. You must determine through best engineering practices how often to perform the following procedure.

## Before You Begin



**ATTENTION:** Before attempting any service to an iTRAK 5730 system See <u>Safety</u> <u>Information on page 32</u>.

### Rail System

Clean all rail surfaces.

1. Wipe the rails down with a lint free cloth.

If necessary, use isopropyl alcohol on the lint-free cloth.

2. Apply a thin coat of Kluber oil (Kluber 4-UH1-68N) on all exposed rail surfaces.

## Track Components

Clean the following surfaces with isopropyl alcohol and soft lint-free cloth.

- Position sensor
- Motor module coil

If there is ferrous debris on the magnet plates, remove them with the sticky side of duct tape or clay.

## Install or Replace Components

The procedures in this section describe how to install or replace system components.

**IMPORTANT** The iTRAK 5730 motor modules and safety-related system do not contain serviceable parts. No repair option is provided if there is a motor module anomaly. If there is a failure, replace the motor module.

## **Replacement Hardware**

**IMPORTANT** All hardware that is removed for service must either be replaced with new hardware from kit catalog number 2198T-BE-KITCON or have thread lock (such as Loctite 243) applied to the threads before the hardware is reinstalled.

Thread patches and thread lock on hardware that is removed for service can become worn during disassembly. If the hardware is reinstalled without having thread lock applied, it will not function correctly. Always apply thread lock, or replace with new hardware. Kit catalog number 2198T-BE-KITCON contains rail kit components that can be used to replace worn hardware.

#### 2198T-BE-KITCON Contents

| Component              | Quantity |
|------------------------|----------|
| M4 x 8 mm Torx screws  | 20       |
| M4 x 20 mm Torx screws | 28       |
| Rectangular rail wedge | 2        |
| Flat rail wedge        | 2        |

For a complete list of tools and accessories that are required for performing these procedures, see <u>Tools and Accessories</u> on page <u>40</u>.

| Procedure   | Page |
|---|------|
| Install or Remove a Position Magnet Assembly      | 139  |
| Install or Replace a Mover                        | 140  |
| Replace a Straight Motor Module                   | 146  |
| Replace a Curved Motor Module                     | 151  |
| Replace Top and Bottom Rectangular Straight Rails | 154  |
| Replace Top and Bottom Rectangular Curved Rails   | 155  |
| Replace Top and Bottom Flat Straight Rails        | 157  |
| Replace Top and Bottom Flat Curved Rails          | 159  |
| Replace Top and Bottom Rectangular Wedges         | 161  |
| Replace Top and Bottom Flat Wedges                | 162  |
| Replace a Connector Module                        | 164  |
| Replace an Infield Cover                          | 165  |

## **Install or Remove a Position Magnet Assembly**

Use this procedure to install or remove a position magnet assembly.

Before You Begin



**ATTENTION:** Before attempting any service to an iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Safety</u> Information on page 32.



**ATTENTION:** A hazard of personal injury or equipment damage exists. The motor magnet protective cover must be installed on a mover whenever the mover is not installed. Before handling a mover with a mover magnet installed, read <u>Safe Magnet Handling on page 37</u>.

What You Need

- T20 Torx bit
- Thread lock (such as Loctite 243)
- 2198T-N1-0304 (south) or 2198T-NN-0304 (north) position magnet assembly
- 2198T-VT0304-E, mover



- You can check the polarity by examining the color of the magnets or by using a compass.
- The south position magnet is identified by the black anodized surface finish.
- The north position magnet is identified by a clear anodized surface finish.

Position magnet assemblies can be replaced while the mover is on the track.

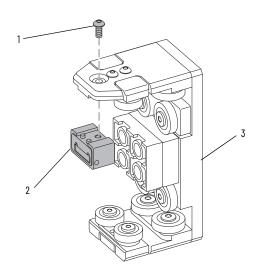
To remove a position magnet assembly, complete this task.

Remove the M4 x 10 mm Torx screw that secures the position magnet assembly to the mover.

To install a position magnet assembly, complete these steps.

- 1. Clean the M4 x 10 mm Torx screw and apply fresh thread lock.
- 2. Place the position magnet onto the locator pins on the underside of the mover top plate.
- 3. Secure the position magnet assembly to the mover by using the M4 x 10 mm Torx screw supplied with the magnet.





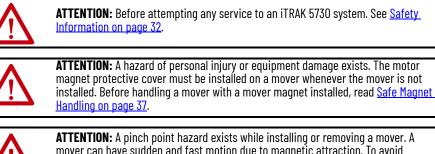
| ltem | Description              |  |  |  |
|------|--------------------------|--|--|--|
| 1    | Torx head screw          |  |  |  |
| 2    | Position magnet assembly |  |  |  |
| 3    | Mover                    |  |  |  |

**IMPORTANT** If you are using the Feedback1CalibrationOffset tag in the Motor Feedback Motion Axis Parameters to make fine adjustments to your mover position calibration, recalibrate the movers that have new position magnets.

## Install or Replace a Mover

Use this procedure to install or replace a mover.

Before You Begin



mover can have sudden and fast motion due to magnetic attraction. To avoid personal injury, do not put your fingers between the mover and the motor module.

Choose an accessible straight track section next to a curved section of the track where you can remove the top and bottom rectangular wedges and rails. A top flat rail must also be removed.

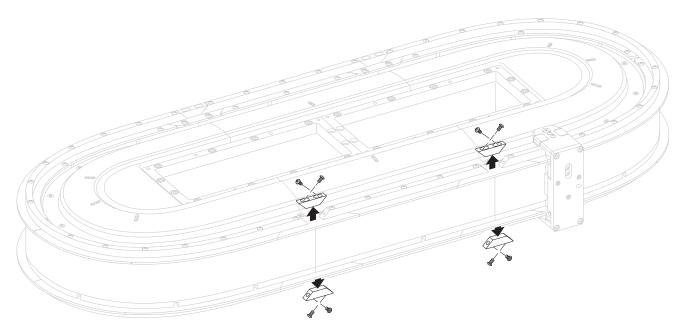
To replace a mover, position the mover over the curved motor module next to the selected straight motor module. Move all other movers off the selected straight section of the track.

What You Need

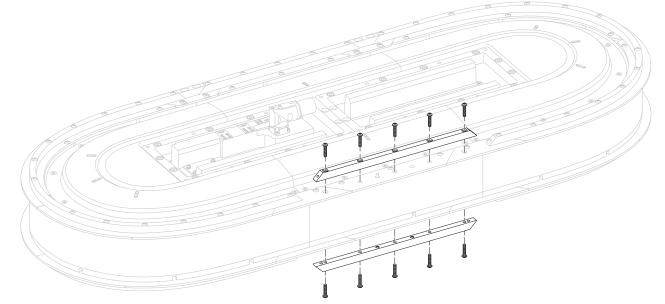
- Rail alignment tool (2198T-A08)
- Mover loader tool (2198T-A09)
- 4 mm hex driver
- Thread lock (such as Loctite 243)
- 2198T-VT0304-E, mover

To install or remove a mover, complete these steps.

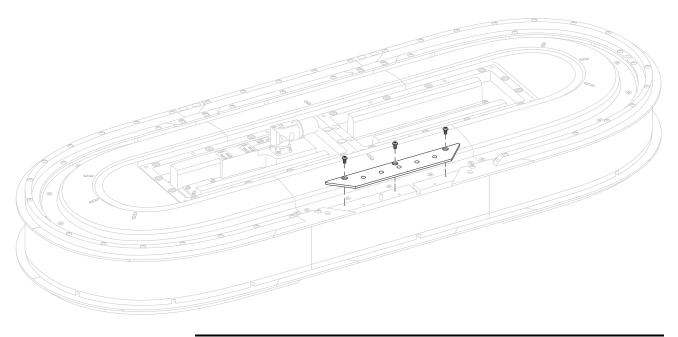
1. On both ends of the straight rectangular rail that will be removed, remove all M4 x 8 mm hardware from the top and bottom rectangular wedges using a 4 mm hex driver. Remove the wedges.



2. Remove the M4 x 20 mm screws from the top and bottom rectangular rails on the same section. Remove the rails.



3. Remove the M4 x 8 mm screws from the top flat rail section.



**IMPORTANT** Do not remove the bottom flat rail section.

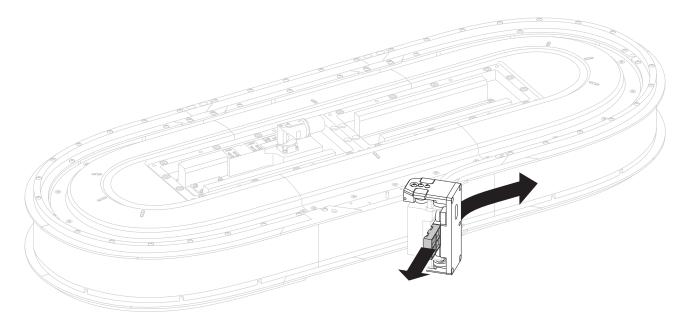
- 4. Place the mover loader tool against the rectangular rail section.
- 5. Secure the mover loader tool to the assembly using two M4 x 8 mm screws.

6. Install or replace your mover.

#### Install a Mover

• As you install a mover, the mover loader tool extracts the motormagnet protective cover.

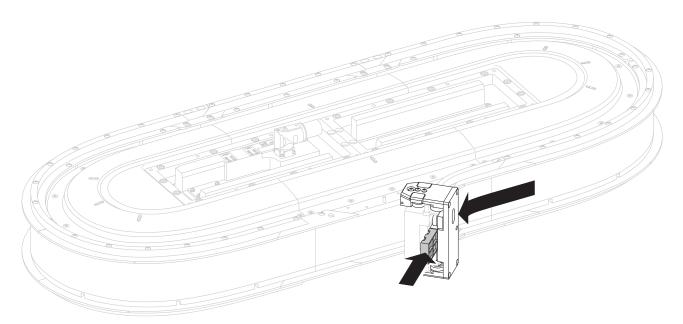
There may be some resistance when pushing the mover across the tool/track interface.



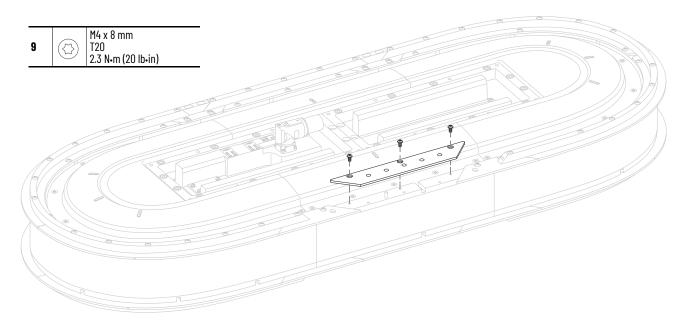
#### Remove a Mover

- a. Place the motor-magnet protective cover in the loader tool.
- b. The protective cover is secured to the motor magnet as you remove the mover from the track.

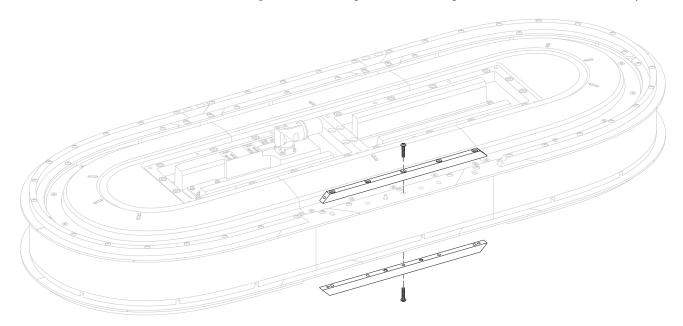
There may be some resistance when pushing the mover across the tool/track interface.



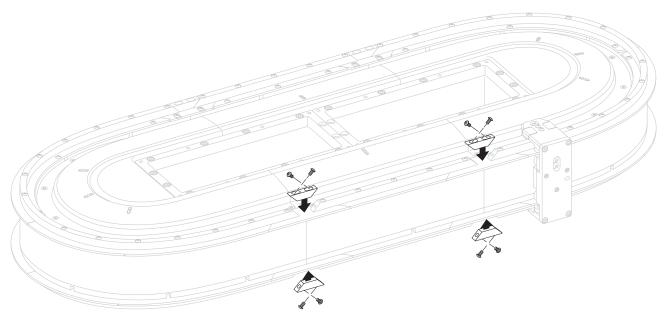
- 7. Remove the mover loader tool.
- 8. Clean the screws and apply fresh thread lock.
- 9. Replace and secure the flat rail by using the M4 x 8 mm Torx screws.



10. Replace the rectangular rails and tighten the middle hardware only.



11. Replace rectangular wedges and hand-tighten all hardware.



- 12. Align the rectangular wedges using the rail alignment tool and torque hardware to 2.3 N•m (20 lb•in).
- 13. Replace all rectangular rail hardware and torque to 2.3 N•m (20 lb•in).

#### **Replace a Straight Motor Module**

Use this procedure to replace a straight motor module.

**IMPORTANT** The iTRAK 5730 motor modules and safety-related system do not contain serviceable parts. No repair option is provided if there is a motor module anomaly. If there is a failure, replace the motor module.

Before You Begin



**ATTENTION:** Before attempting any service to an iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Safety</u> Information on page 32.

What You Need

- 4 mm hex driver
- #2 Phillips bit
- Hard rubber mallet
- Thread lock (such as Loctite 243)
- 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2, straight motor module

To remove the straight motor module, complete these steps.

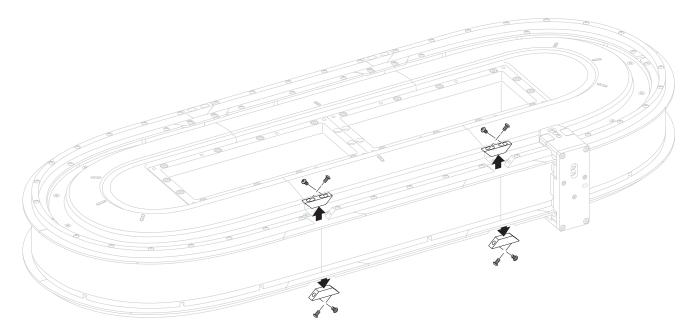
1. Move the movers away from the motor module that you want to replace.

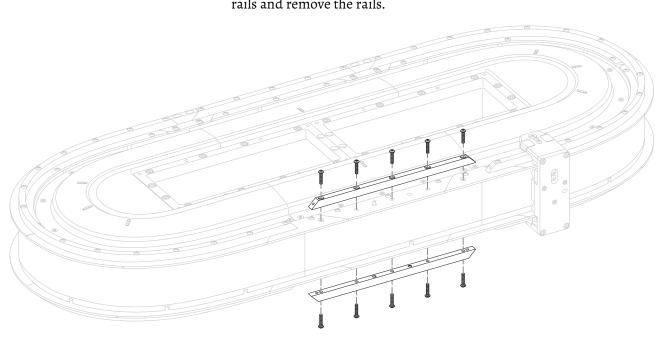
If you have to remove the movers, follow the steps in <u>Install or Replace a</u> <u>Mover on page 140</u>.

- 2. If the infield covers are installed, use a 10 mm hexagonal socket to remove the M6 x 35 mm hex head bolts and remove the covers.
- 3. Use a #2 Phillips bit to loosen the captive screws on the connector modules that are connected to the motor section that is being removed.

Remove the modules and set aside.

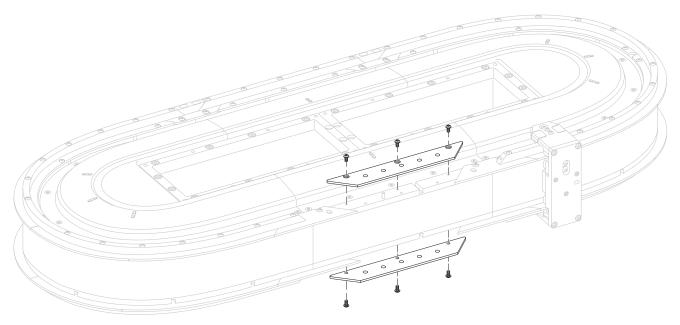
4. Remove all M4 x 8 mm hardware from the top and bottom rectangular wedges from both sides of the motor module that is being removed and remove the wedges.



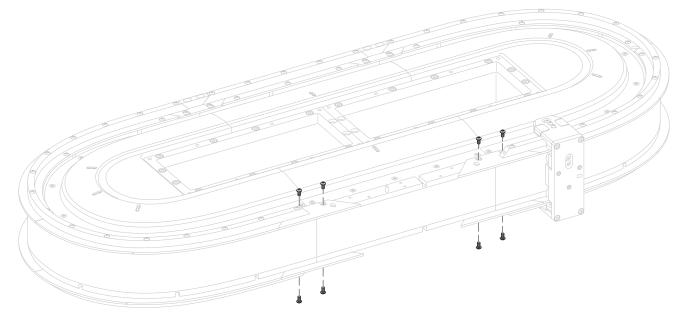


5. Remove the M4 x 20 mm screws from the top and bottom rectangular rails and remove the rails.

6. Remove the M4 x 8 mm screws from the top and bottom flat rail section and remove the rails.



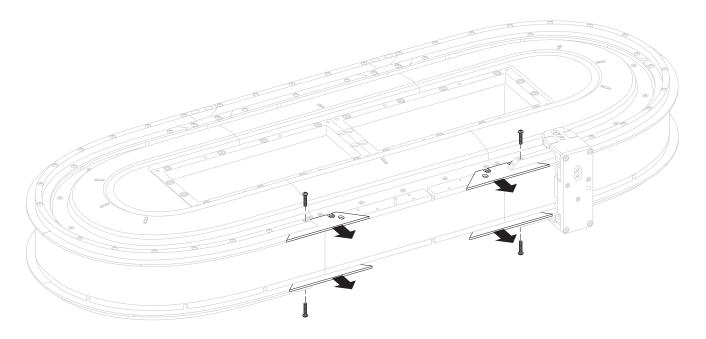
7. Remove the M4 x 8 mm hardware from the flat wedges on either side of the section being removed.



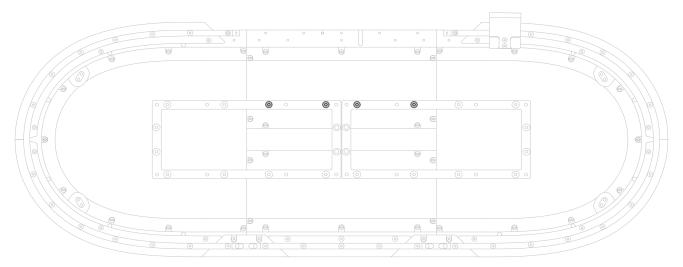
8. Remove the first M4 x 20 mm hardware from either side of the adjacent rectangular sections and remove the wedges.



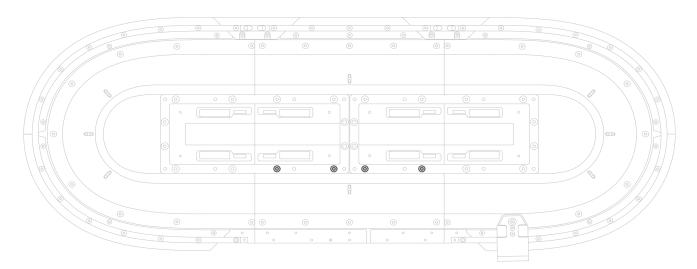
 $\ensuremath{\textbf{ATTENTION:}}$  The rail components are sharp. Wear appropriate PPE and handle the rails with care.



9. Remove the M6 x 20 mm screws from the two bottom structural mounting rings that are connected to the module being replaced. Retain the screws for reuse.



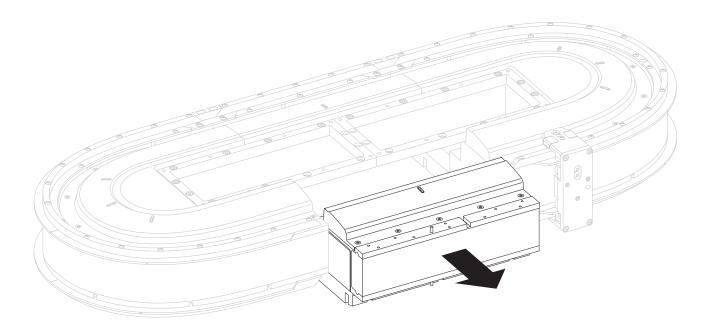
10. Remove M6 x 20 mm screws from the top structural mounting ring. Retain the screws for reuse.



11. Carefully slide the module out of the system and replace with the new straight motor module section.



If the motor module cannot be easily removed, loosen adjacent mounting ring bolts (but do not remove).



- 12. Reassemble the module in the reverse order of disassembly, using the following steps:
  - a. See <u>Install Top Structural Mounting Rings on page 45</u> to reinstall the top structural mounting ring.
  - b. See <u>Install Bottom Structural Mounting Rings on page 48</u> to reinstall the bottom structural mounting ring.
  - c. See <u>Install Bottom Flat Rails and Flat Wedges on page 49</u> to reinstall the bottom flat rails and wedges.
  - d. See <u>Install Bottom Rectangular Rails on page 52</u> to reinstall the bottom rectangular rails.
  - e. See <u>Install Rectangular Wedges and Align Rectangular Rails on</u> page 54 to reinstall the rectangular wedges and to align the rails.
  - f. See <u>Install Top Rails, Wedges, and Connector Modules on page 56</u> to reinstall the top rails, wedges, and connector modules.
  - g. See <u>Optional Infield Covers on page 67</u> to reinstall the infield covers, if used.



**ATTENTION:** A hazard of personal injury or equipment damage exits. Safety function validation is required after initial installation or replacement of an iTRAK 5730 motor module that is configured for functional safety.

If you have replaced a straight motor module that was configured for Integrated Safety, see <u>Understand Integrated Safety Motor Module</u> <u>Replacement on page 198</u>.

#### **Replace a Curved Motor Module**

Use this procedure to replace a curved motor module.

**IMPORTANT** The iTRAK 5730 motor modules and safety-related system do not contain serviceable parts. No repair option is provided if there is a motor module anomaly. If there is a failure, replace the motor module.

Before You Begin



**ATTENTION:** Before attempting any service to an iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Safety</u> Information on page 32.

What You Need

- Rail alignment tool (2198T A08)
- 4 mm hex driver
- #2 Phillips bit
- Thread lock (such as Loctite 243)
- 2198T-L20-T0309-D18-S2, curved motor module

To remove the curved module, complete these steps.

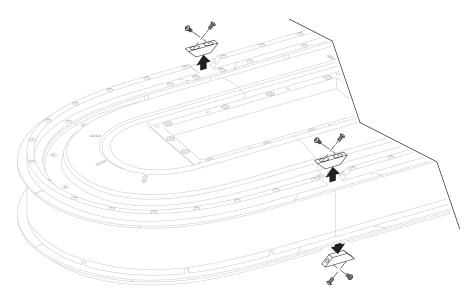
1. Slide the movers away from the motor module that you want to replace.

If you have to remove the movers, follow the steps in <u>Install or Replace a</u> <u>Mover on page 140</u>.

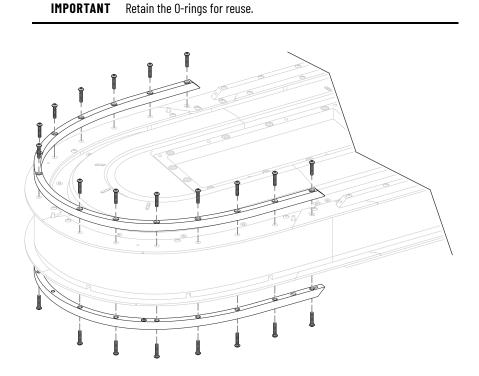
- 2. If the infield covers are installed, use a 10 mm hexagonal socket to remove the M6 x 35 mm hex head bolts and remove the covers.
- 3. Use a #2 Phillips bit to loosen the captive screws on the connector modules that are connected to the motor section that is being removed.

Remove the modules and set aside.

4. Remove all M4 x 8 mm hardware from the top and bottom rectangular wedges on either side of the curved motor module that is being removed.

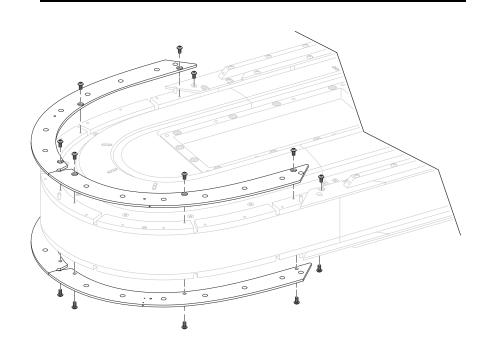


5. Remove all M4 x 20 mm hardware from the top and bottom rectangular rails from the curved motor module. Remove the rails.

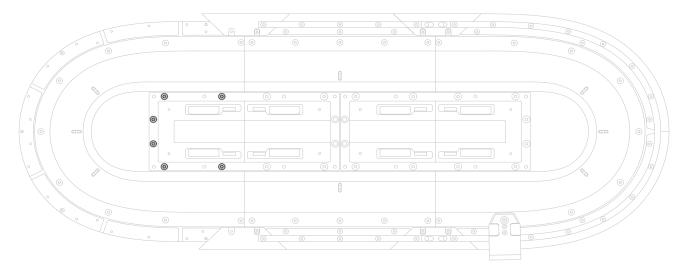


6. Remove all M4 x 8 mm hardware from the top and bottom flat rails from the curved motor module. Remove the flat rails.

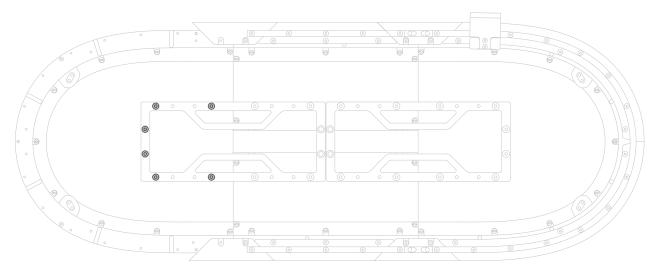
**IMPORTANT** Retain the O-rings for reuse.



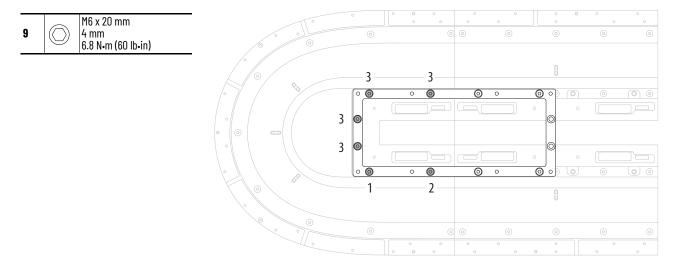
7. Remove the M6 x 20 mm screws from the top structural mounting ring. Retain the screws for reuse.



8. Remove the M6 x 20 mm screws from the bottom structural mounting ring. Retain the screws for reuse.



- 9. Remove the old motor module.
- 10. Place the new curved motor module and apply torque to the top and bottom structural mounting rings in the following order.



- 11. Reassemble the module in the reverse order of disassembly, using the following steps:
  - a. See <u>Install Bottom Flat Rails and Flat Wedges on page 49</u> to reinstall the bottom flat rails and wedges.
  - b. See <u>Install Bottom Rectangular Rails on page 52</u> to reinstall the bottom rectangular rails.
  - c. See <u>Install Rectangular Wedges and Align Rectangular Rails on</u> <u>page 54</u> to reinstall the rectangular wedges and to align the rails.
  - d. See <u>Install Top Rails, Wedges, and Connector Modules on page 56</u> to reinstall the top rails, wedges, and connector modules.
  - e. See <u>Optional Infield Covers on page 67</u> to reinstall the infield covers, if used.



**ATTENTION:** A hazard of personal injury or equipment damage exits. Safety function validation is required after initial installation or replacement of an iTRAK 5730 motor module that is configured for functional safety.

If you have replaced a curved motor module that was configured for Integrated Safety, see <u>Understand Integrated Safety Motor Module Replacement on</u> page 198.

### **Replace Top and Bottom Rectangular Straight Rails**

The procedure to replace top or bottom rectangular straight rails are the same. You must also perform the rail alignment procedure. Follow these steps to replace top and bottom rectangular straight rails.

Before you Begin



**ATTENTION:** Before attempting any service to an iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Safety Information on page 32</u>.

#### What You Need

- 4 mm hex driver
- Thread lock (such as Loctite 243)
- Straight rail kit:
  - 2198T-BE-ST03, 300 mm (11.81 in.) straight rail kit
  - 2198T-BE-ST06, 600 mm (23.62 in.) straight rail kit
  - 2198T-BE-ST09, 900 mm (35.43 in.) straight rail kit

To remove the top and bottom rectangular rails, complete these steps.

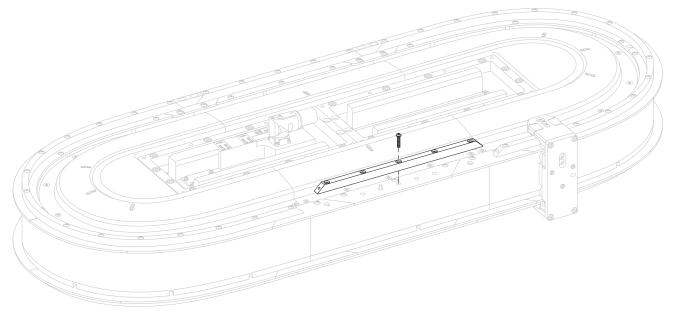
- 1. Slide the movers away from the rail to be replaced.
- 2. On either side of the rectangular straight rail that is being replaced, remove the M4 x 8 mm Torx head screws from the rectangular wedges.
- 3. Remove the wedges.
- 4. Remove all M4 x 20 mm Torx head screws from the rectangular rail that is being replaced.

5. With the counter-bored holes visible (up), place a straight rectangular rail on a straight flat rail until it is fully seated against the flat rail below.



The motor modules contain pins along the surface that are used to locate the rails properly.

6. Insert an M4 x 20 mm Torx head screw into the center counter-bored hole on the rail and tighten the screw until it is fully seated against the rail (do <u>not</u> apply final torque).



- 7. Loosen the screw one turn.
- 8. To align the new rectangular rail, complete the steps that are outlined in <u>Install Rectangular Wedges and Align Rectangular Rails on page 54</u>.

#### **Replace Top and Bottom Rectangular Curved Rails**

Follow these steps to replace top and bottom rectangular curved rails.

Before you Begin



**ATTENTION:** Before attempting any service to an iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Safety</u> Information on page 32.

What You Need

- T20 Torx bit
- Thread lock (such as Loctite 243)
- 2198T-BE-ED18, curved rail kit

To remove the top and bottom rectangular curved rails, complete these steps.

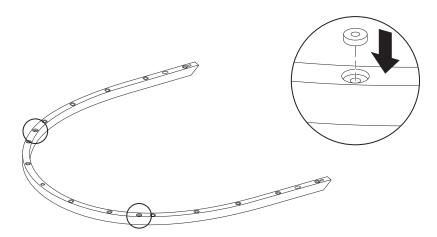
1. Use a T20 Torx bit to remove hardware from the rectangular curved rail that is being replaced. Remove the rail.

**IMPORTANT** If one end of the new rail is next to a curved section, insert and align that wedge first.

2. Place and seat a rubber O-ring in each of the two lubrication system openings on a curved rectangular-rail section.



A drop of oil can help to keep the rubber O-ring in place.

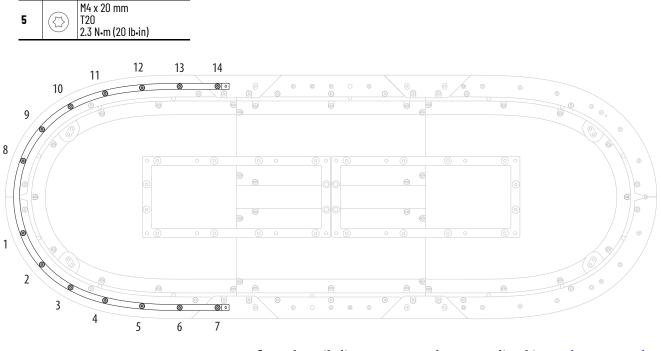


3. With the counter-bored holes visible (up) of the new rail, place on the curved rectangular rail until it is fully seated against the flat rail below.



The motor modules contain pins along the surface that are used to locate the rails properly.

- 4. Insert 14 M4 x 20 mm Torx head screws into the counter-bored holes on the rail.
- 5. Follow the sequence shown here to apply final torque to the 14 Torx head screws.



6. Perform the rail alignment procedure as outlined in <u>Replace Top and</u> <u>Bottom Rectangular Wedges on page 161</u>.

### **Replace Top and Bottom Flat Straight Rails**

Follow these steps to replace top and bottom flat straight rails.

Before you Begin



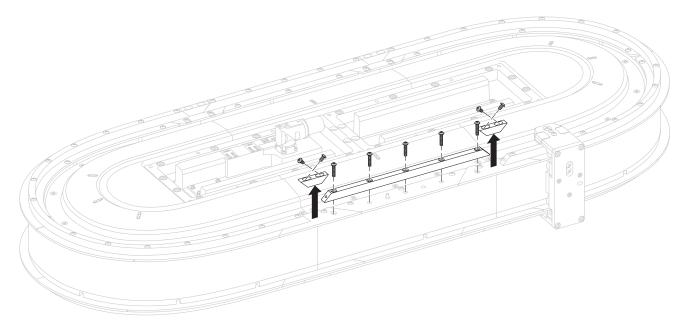
**ATTENTION:** Before attempting any service to an iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Safety</u> <u>Information on page 32</u>.

What You Need

- T20 Torx bit
- Thread lock (such as Loctite 243)
- Straight rail kit
  - 2198T-BE-ST03, 300 mm (11.81 in.) straight rail kit
  - 2198T-BE-ST06, 600 mm (23.62 in.) straight rail kit
  - 2198T-BE-ST09, 900 mm (35.43 in.) straight rail kit

To remove the top and bottom flat straight rails, complete these steps.

1. Remove the hardware from the rectangular rail and rectangular wedges that are installed on the flat straight rail to be replaced.

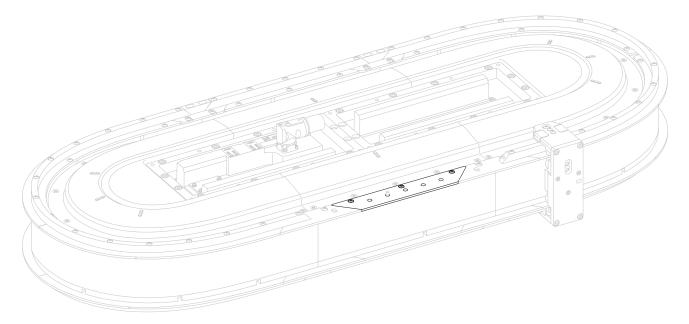


- 2. Remove the rectangular rails and wedges.
- 3. Remove the flat rail from the motor module.
- 4. Remove the protective end-caps from the replacement rail.
- 5. By using a lint free cloth and isopropyl alcohol, clean the surface of the replacement rail.
- 6. Loosen the hardware of the flat wedges on either side of the rail being replaced.

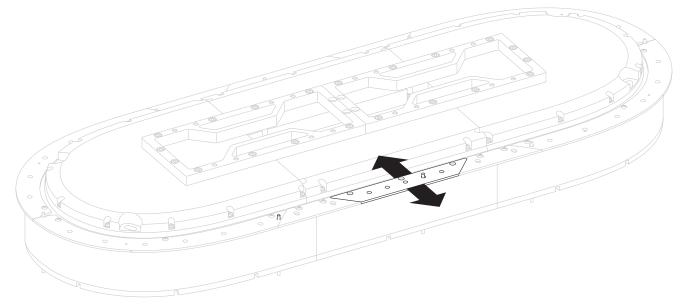
- 7. With the counter-bored holes visible (up), place the straight flat rail on the motor module.
- 8. Insert and finger-tighten an M4 x 8 mm Torx screw in each of the counter-board holes.
- 9. Loosen each of the M4 x 8 mm Torx screws one half of a turn.



The screw heads should remain in the counter-bore just below the surface of the flat rails. The screws must be loose enough to allow for rail alignment adjustments.



#### 10. Move the rail inward or outward until it stops against the screw head.



11. While holding the rail in place, hand-tighten the M4 x 8 mm Torx screws (do <u>not</u> apply final torque).

- 12. Align the two flat rail wedges with the straight rail section.
- 13. While holding the wedge rail in place, hand-tighten the M4 x 8 mm Torx screws (do <u>not</u> apply final torque).

- 14. When all flat rails are in alignment, apply final torque to all screws.
- 15. Replace the rectangular rails and wedges as outlined in <u>Replace Top</u> <u>and Bottom Rectangular Straight Rails on page 154</u> and <u>Replace Top</u> <u>and Bottom Rectangular Wedges on page 161</u>

#### **Replace Top and Bottom Flat Curved Rails**

Follow these steps to replace top and bottom flat curved rails.

Before you Begin



**ATTENTION:** Before attempting any service to an iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Safety Information on page 32</u>.

What You Need

- T20 Torx bit
- Thread lock (such as Loctite 243)
- Isopropyl alcohol
- 2198T-BE-ED18, curved rail kit

To remove the top and bottom flat curved rails, complete these steps.

1. Use a T20 Torx bit to remove hardware from the rectangular curved rail on the flat curved rail that is being replaced.

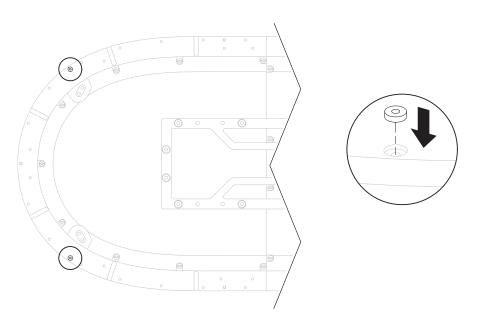
**IMPORTANT** Do not lose the O-rings in the bottom of the curved rectangular rail.

- 2. Use a T20 Torx bit to remove hardware from the flat curved rail.
- 3. Remove the protective end-caps from the replacement rail.

- 4. By using a lint free cloth and isopropyl alcohol, clean the surface of the replacement rail.
- 5. Place a rubber O-ring in each of the two lubrication system openings on each of the curved motor modules.



A drop of oil can help to keep the rubber O-ring in place.

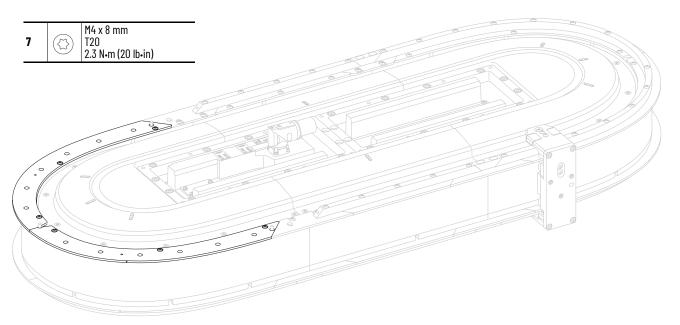


6. With the counter-bored holes visible (up), place the new curved flat rails on the surface of the curved motor modules and align the mounting holes.



The motor modules contain pins along the surface that are used to locate the rails properly.

7. Apply final torque to curved flat rail hardware.



8. Replace the rectangular rails and wedges as outlined in <u>Replace Top</u> <u>and Bottom Rectangular Straight Rails on page 154</u> and <u>Replace Top</u> <u>and Bottom Rectangular Wedges on page 161</u>

#### **Replace Top and Bottom Rectangular Wedges**

Follow these steps to replace top and bottom rectangular wedges.

Before you Begin



**ATTENTION:** Before attempting any service to an iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Safety</u> Information on page 32.

What You Need

- T20 Torx bit
- Thread lock (such as Loctite 243)
- Isopropyl alcohol
- Rectangular wedge

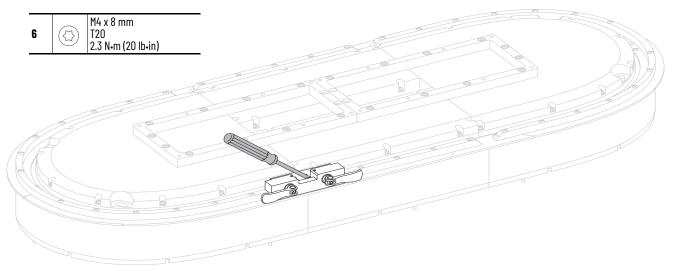
To remove the top and bottom rectangular wedges, complete these steps.

- 1. Use a T20 Torx bit to remove the wedge hardware, and remove the wedge.
- 2. Place a rectangular wedge in the gap between the rectangular rails.
- 3. Insert an M4 x 8 mm Torx head screw into the counter-bored holes on the wedge and finger-tighten the screws.
- 4. With the tool clamps unlocked, place the rail alignment tool (cat. no. 2198T-A08) over the center of the wedge.



Verify that you can access each of the screws in the wedge with the driver bit, without interference from the alignment tool.

- 5. While you press downward on the rail alignment tool to ensure that the tool is in full contact with the rails, lock the tool clamps.
- 6. Apply final torque to screws in the wedge.



### **Replace Top and Bottom Flat Wedges**

Follow these steps to replace top and bottom flat wedges.

Before you Begin



**ATTENTION:** Before attempting any service to an iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Safety</u> <u>Information on page 32</u>.

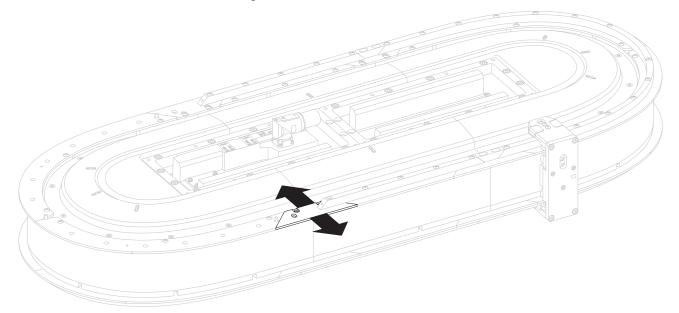
What You Need

- T20 Torx bit
- Thread lock (such as Loctite 243)
- Isopropyl alcohol
- Flat wedge

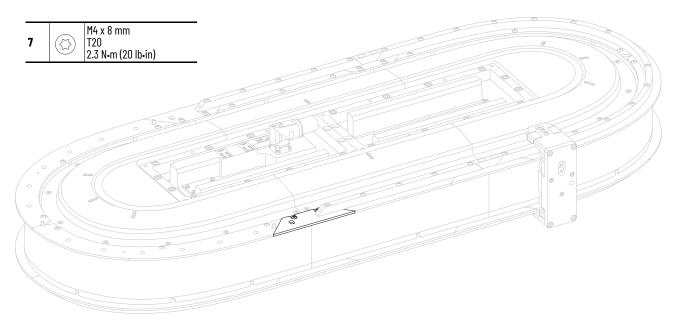
To replace the top and bottom flat wedges, complete these steps.

- 1. Use a T20 Torx bit to remove hardware from the rectangular curved rail on the flat wedge that is being replaced.
- 2. Use a T20 Torx bit to remove hardware from the flat wedge.
- 3. Remove the protective end-caps from the replacement rail.
- 4. By using a lint free cloth and isopropyl alcohol, clean the surface of the replacement rail.

- 5. With the counter-bored holes visible (up), place a straight flat-rail wedge on the motor module.
- 6. Bias the wedge rail to align with the flat rails on either side and handtighten the M4 x 8 mm Torx screws.



7. When all flat rails are in alignment, apply final torque to all screws.



8. Replace the rectangular rails and wedges as outlined in <u>Replace Top</u> <u>and Bottom Rectangular Straight Rails on page 154</u> and <u>Replace Top</u> <u>and Bottom Rectangular Wedges on page 161</u>.

#### **Replace a Connector Module**

Use this procedure to replace a connector module.

Before You Begin



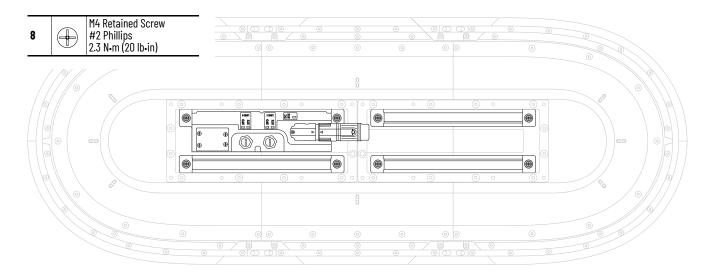
**ATTENTION:** Before attempting any service to an iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Safety</u> Information on page 32.

What You Need

- #2 Phillips bit
- Connector module:
  - 2198T-CT-CP, power and control input connector module
  - 2198T-CT-P, power input with control pass-through connector module
  - 2198T-CT, power and control pass-through connector module

To remove the connector module, complete these steps.

- 1. If necessary, remove the infield covers in the reverse order of installation. See <u>Optional Infield Covers</u> on page <u>67</u>.
- 2. If you are replacing a power and control input connector module (cat. no. 2198T-CT-CP) or power with control pass-through connector (cat. no. 2198T-CT-P), complete steps a and b.
  - a. Rotate the power cable connector outer housing to the unlocked position.
  - b. Remove the cable connector from the motor power connector on the connector module.
- 3. If you are replacing a power and control input connector module (cat. no. 2198T-CT-CP), complete steps a and b.
  - a. Rotate the Ethernet cable outer housing counter-clockwise until it is free from the cable-connector mounting ring on the module.
  - b. Remove the Ethernet cable from the connector on the connector module.
- 4. Use a #2 Phillips bit to loosen the captive screws on the connector module and remove the module.



#### **Replace an Infield Cover**

Use this procedure to replace an infield cover.

Before You Begin



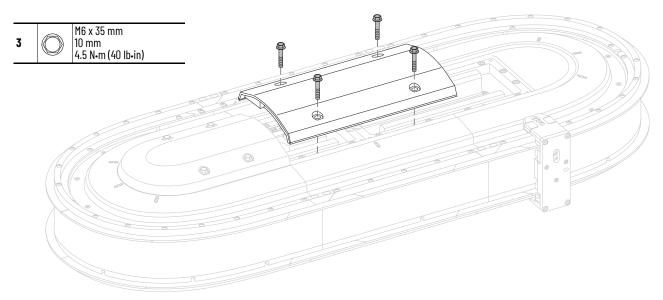
**ATTENTION:** Before attempting any service to an iTRAK 5730 system. See <u>Safety</u> <u>Information on page 32</u>.

What You Need

- 10 mm hexagonal socket
- Thread lock (such as Loctite 243)
- Infield cover kit:
  - 2198T-AS-CD18-U, curve covers
  - 2198T-AS-CA03-U, straight cover
  - 2198T-AS-CD18, curve covers with Allen-Bradley® logo

To remove an infield cover, complete these steps.

- 1. Remove the M6 x 35 hex head bolts and remove the infield cover.
- 2. Repeat <u>step 1</u> for the remaining covers.



- 3. Apply thread lock to the M6 x 35 hex head bolts.
- 4. Secure the infield covers to the assembly.

### **Replace a Lubricant Cartridge**

The lubricant pumps are manufactured by perma and are part of the perma STAR CONTROL product line. See the <u>perma STAR CONTROL product line</u> <u>webpage</u>. That webpage links to the perma STAR CONTROL operating instructions, perma publication 109301\_STAR\_CONTROL\_PE\_A01\_int23. In the operating instructions, see the section "LC exchange". That section provides the steps to replace a lubricant cartridge.

# Lubrication

The rail and rail bearings are an open system that requires a regular schedule of lubrication. To avoid breakdown of the bearings, the bearings must have a film of oil on them. Typical indications of bearing breakdown are discoloration and excessive wear on the inner and outer bearing surfaces. The time interval between applications of lubricant depends on the length of stroke, duty cycle, and environmental factors. Use 68 viscosity mineral oil, such as Kluber 4-UH1-68N, to lubricate the rails and bearings.

To provide a regular schedule of lubrication, we recommend that you use the iTRAK Lubrication System, catalog number 2198T-AL-SYS-4. Installation instructions for the lubrication system start on page 63. If you design and supply your own oil bleed system, you can use these installation instructions for guidance.

Once the iTRAK Lubrication System or customer provided oil bleed system is installed, see either <u>Lubrication Using an iTRAK Lubrication System</u> or <u>Lubrication Using a Customer Provided Oil Bleed System on page 172</u>.

### Lubrication Using an iTRAK Lubrication System

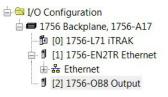
Once the iTRAK lubrication system is installed and wired, use the following procedures to configure the lubrication system:

- <u>Perform Initial Lubrication with an iTRAK Lubrication System on</u> page 167
  - <u>Configure Normal Operation Lubrication with an iTRAK Lubrication</u> <u>System on page 170</u>

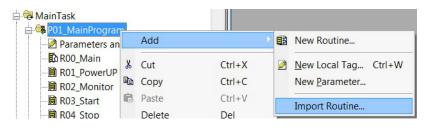
Perform Initial Lubrication with an iTRAK Lubrication System

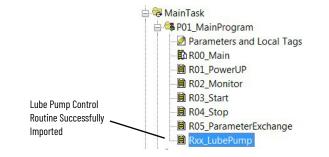
During first-time start or when the rails have been cleaned, complete the following steps.

- 1. See the <u>perma STAR CONTROL product line webpage</u>. That webpage links to the perma STAR CONTROL operating instructions, perma publication 109301\_STAR\_CONTROL\_PE\_A01\_int23. In the operating instructions, see the section titled Configuration IMPULSE. Use the procedure in Configuration IMPULSE to configure each pump in the system as follows.
  - a. Set the operation mode to IMPULSE mode.
  - b. Set the size of the lubricant cartridge of the pump.
  - c. Set the volume of oil dispensed per impulse to 0.7 cc (0.024 oz).
- 2. Download the lubrication-system-pump-control routine by clicking this link: <u>Rxx\_LubePump [ROUTINE].L5X</u>.
- 3. Add an output module to the IO tree.



4. Import the lube pump control routine.





5. In the main routine, add a Jump to Subroutine (JSR) that jumps to the lube pump control routine.



6. Open Parameters and Local Tags and search for Out\_LubePump.

| Name           | Alias For | Base Tag | Usage  | Data Type | Description | External Acces | Constant | Style   | Connections       |
|----------------|-----------|----------|--------|-----------|-------------|----------------|----------|---------|-------------------|
| ⊡-Out_LubePump |           |          | Output | DINT      |             | Read/Write     |          | Decimal | {0:2} Connections |
| Out_LubePump.0 |           |          |        | BOOL      |             | Read/Write     |          | Decimal | Local:2:0.Data.0  |
| Out_LubePump.1 |           |          |        | BOOL      |             | Read/Write     |          | Decimal | Local:2:0.Data.1  |
| Out_LubePump.2 |           |          |        | BOOL      |             | Read/Write     |          | Decimal |                   |

- 7. In the Connections column, configure connections for the outputs to the pumps.
- 8. Open Parameters and Local Tags and search for the following input parameters:
  - Inp\_PrimePump signal to start the sequence of lubricant dispensations for initial lubrication. Each dispensation in the sequence corresponds to one impulse to the pumps. The Inp\_PrimePump signal is triggered from the PLC program or HMI.
  - Inp\_PrimeTime the number of seconds between each lubricant dispensation during initial lubrication.

| Name          | Alias For | Base Tag | Usage | Data Type | Description       | External Acces | Constant | Style   | Connections          |
|---------------|-----------|----------|-------|-----------|-------------------|----------------|----------|---------|----------------------|
| Inp_PrimePump | -         |          | Input | BOOL      |                   | Read/Write     |          | Decimal |                      |
| Inp_PrimeTime |           |          | Local | REAL      | (time in seconds) | Read/Write     |          | Float   | THE REPORT OF STREET |
| Inp_RunPump   |           |          | Input | BOOL      |                   | Read/Write     |          | Decimal | RunProduction        |
| Inp_RunTime   |           |          | Local | REAL      | (time in seconds) | Read/Write     |          | Float   |                      |

- 9. Configure the Inp\_PrimePump parameter as shown in the example in <u>step 8</u>.
- Configure the Inp\_PrimeTime parameter as shown in the example in step 8, with one addition; in the Description column, include the number of seconds between each lubrication dispensation during initial lubrication. The recommended value is 600 seconds (10 minutes).
- 11. To start the prime time, or initial lubrication sequence, trigger the first Inp-PrimePump lubrication dispensation using the PLC program or HMI.
- 12. While initial lubrication is underway, and a sequence of oil dispensations occurs on the interval in Inp\_PrimeTime, monitor the rails at the oil application sites to see if oil has appeared on the rails. It may be hard to see if oil has appeared. You may need to feel the rails at the oil application sites.
- 13. Once oil appears on the rails, run the iTRAK 5730 system at 0.5 m/s mover velocity, while letting the Inp\_PrimePump lubrication sequence continue to run.

| IMPORTANT | It is important that you not run the iTRAK 5730 system too early, before oil has<br>appeared on the rails. Only run the iTRAK 5730 system once oil has already<br>begun to contact the rails. Running the system with no oil damages the rails.   |
|-----------|---|
|           | It is less important, but still a consideration, to avoid starting to run the iTRAK<br>system too long after oil has appeared on the rails. If oil begins to appear on the<br>rails and the lubrication system continues to pump out more oil without the<br>movers moving, oil drips away and is wasted. Once oil appears on the rails,<br>moving the movers allows the mover cams to distribute the oil onto the rails,<br>helping prevent dripping from the application sites. |

- 14. While the iTRAK 5730 system runs, the lubrication system continues to dispense 0.7 cc (0.024 oz) of lubricant onto each rail every 10 minutes. To determine whether each rail has been lubricated along the entire perimeter of the track, monitor the rails. It may be hard to see if each rail has been lubricated along the entire perimeter of the track. If so, you can check if the rails are fully lubricated as follows:
  - a. Stop the motion of the movers.
  - b. Select a test location on each rail that is farthest from the oil application sites.
  - c. At the test location, on the surface of the rail that contacts the mover roller, touch the rail with a finger, and determine if it is adequately lubricated:
  - If oil is not present, there are signs of rusting, or most of the oil is black, more lubrication is required. If this is true, continue running the lubrication system and the iTRAK system to distribute more oil onto the tracks. It is normal for some oil to become black, so if a small percentage of the oils is black, it does not mean you have to add more lubricant to complete initial lubrication.
  - If oil is present on each rail, and the signs that more lubrication is required are not present, initial lubrication is complete.
- 15. Once initial lubrication is complete, end the Inp-PrimePump lubrication dispensation using the PLC program or HMI.
- 16. Proceed to configure normal operation lubrication.

Configure Normal Operation Lubrication with an iTRAK Lubrication System

The frequency of lubricant dispensations and the volume of lubricant dispensed during each dispensation during normal operation depend on many factors. These factors include length of track, number of movers, application motion profile, cleanliness of the operating environment, and other factors. <u>Table 31</u> provides rough guidelines for the lubrication of each rail. Adjust the lubrication frequency and volume as needed for each individual system. Adjust the lubrication frequency and volume to maintain a thin film of oil that evenly coats the rail contact surfaces.

To allow the oil to coat the rails evenly, it is best to have a higher frequency of oil dispensations, with a lower volume of oil dispensed during each dispensation. Avoid over-oiling the rails to an extent that causes excessive oil splatter.



**ATTENTION:** Systems with 16 or more movers may require higher volumes of lubrication than indicated in <u>Table 31</u>. For these systems, monitor the rails closely to help prevent rail damage while determining the proper lubrication schedule for the system.

| Straight System Length<br>mm (ft) <sup>(2)</sup> | Rail             | Volume of Oil Dispensed Onto<br>the Rail During Each<br>Dispensation cc (oz) | Runtime Interval Between<br>Dispensations |  |
|--|------------------|--|---|--|
|  | Top rail         |  |   |  |
| 3001200 (1.03.9)                                 | Each middle rail | 0.20 (0.007)   |   |  |
|  | Bottom rail      |  |   |  |
|  | Top rail         |  |   |  |
| 12002400 (3.97.9)                                | Each middle rail | 0.30 (0.010)   |   |  |
|  | Bottom rail      |  |   |  |
|  | Top rail         |  |   |  |
| 24003300 (7.910.8)                               | Each middle rail | 0.40 (0.014)   | -3 hours of runtime                       |  |
|  | Bottom rail      |  |   |  |
|  | Top rail         |  |   |  |
| 33005100 (10.816.7)                              | Each middle rail | 0.60 (0.020)   |   |  |
|  | Bottom rail      |  |   |  |
|  | Top rail         |  |   |  |
| 51006300 (16.720.7)                              | Each middle rail | 0.70 (0.024)   |   |  |
|  | Bottom rail      |  |   |  |
|  | Top rail         |  |   |  |
| 63008700 (20.728.5)                              | Each middle rail | 1.00 (0.034)   |   |  |
|  | Bottom rail      | ]  |   |  |

Table 31 - Lubrication Guidelines<sup>(1)</sup>

(1) The values in this table are guidelines. Your application may require a different volume of oil or frequency of dispensations.

(2) The straight system length is the combined length of all straight rails in the track dived by two.

To program an iTRAK lubrication system with a normal operation lubrication schedule, perform the following procedure:

1. Make sure that initial lubrication has been completed. See <u>Perform</u> <u>Initial Lubrication with an iTRAK Lubrication System on page 167</u>.

- 2. See the <u>perma STAR CONTROL product line webpage</u>. That webpage links to the perma STAR CONTROL operating instructions, perma publication 109301\_STAR\_CONTROL\_PE\_A01\_int23. In the operating instructions, see the section titled Configuration IMPULSE. Use the procedure in Configuration IMPULSE to configure each pump in the system as follows.
  - a. Set the operation mode to IMPULSE mode.
  - b. Set the size of the lubricant cartridge of the pump.
  - c. Set the volume of oil dispensed per impulse to a volume you think is appropriate for your system. It is recommended to use the volumes in <u>Table 31</u> as a starting point. Volumes can be adjusted later if needed.
- 3. Open Parameters and Local Tags and search for the following input parameters:
  - Inp\_RunPump signal to start the sequence of lubricant dispensations for normal operation lubrication. Each dispensation in the sequence corresponds to one impulse to the pumps.
  - Inp\_RunTime the number of seconds of runtime between each lubricant dispensation during normal operation.

| Name          | Alias For | Base Tag | Usage | Data Type | Description                                    | External Acces | Constant | Style   | Connections         |
|---------------|-----------|----------|-------|-----------|--|----------------|----------|---------|---------------------|
| Inp_PrimePump |           |          | Input | BOOL      | a na sa ang ang ang ang ang ang ang ang ang an | Read/Write     |          | Decimal |                     |
| Inp_PrimeTime | <br>12    |          | Local | REAL      | (time in seconds)                              | Read/Write     |          | Float   | THE RANGE CONTRACTS |
| Inp_RunPump   |           |          | Input | BOOL      |  | Read/Write     |          | Decimal | RunProduction       |
| Inp_RunTime   |           |          | Local | REAL      | (time in seconds)                              | Read/Write     |          | Float   |                     |

- 4. Configure the Inp\_RunPump parameter as shown in the example in <u>step 3</u>. In the Connections column, make sure that there is a parameter connection to the RunProduction tag. This connection allows the sequence of Inp\_RunPump/Inp\_RunTime lubricant dispensations to be triggered when the set amount of runtime has elapsed.
- 5. Configure the Inp\_RunTime parameter as shown in the example in <u>step 3</u>, with one addition; in the Description column, include the number of seconds of runtime between lubricant dispensations. The recommended value is 10,800 seconds (3 hours) of runtime.
- 6. Run the iTRAK 5730 system and monitor the rails every few minutes over the course of the period of runtime set in the Inp\_RunTime parameter. Check to see if a thin film of oil is maintained throughout this period. If it is not, reduce the time in the Inp\_RunTime parameter or increase the volume of oil dispensed during each dispensation. Continue to monitor the rails until an oil volume per dispensation and dispensation frequency can be established for the current application.
- 7. Check that oil dispensations occur on the Inp\_RunTime parameter interval.
- 8. With the established oil volume per dispensation and dispensation frequency, and an estimate of runtime per day, you can calculate the system rate of oil consumption. With the oil consumption rate and the volume of oil in each lubricant cartridge, you can calculate how often you must replace lubricant cartridges. To ensure proper functioning and help prevent system damage, make sure to provide a regular supply of lubricant. See <u>Replace a Lubricant Cartridge on page 166</u>.

#### Lubrication Using a Customer Provided Oil Bleed System

Once the iTRAK lubrication system is installed and wired, use the following procedures to configure the lubrication system.

Perform Initial Lubrication with a Customer Provided Oil Bleed System

During first-time start or when the rails have been cleaned, complete these steps.

- 1. Run your lubrication system and monitor the rails at the oil application sites to see if oil has appeared on the rails. It may be hard to see if oil has appeared. You may need to feel the rails at the oil application sites.
- 2. Once oil appears on the rails, run the iTRAK 5730 system at 0.5 m/s mover velocity, while continuing to run the lubrication system.

| IMPORTANT | It is important that you not run the iTRAK 5730 system too early, before oil has appeared on the rails. Only run the iTRAK 5730 system once oil has already begun to contact the rails. Running the system with no oil damages the rails.  |
|-----------|--|
|           | It is less important, but still a consideration, to avoid starting to run the iTRAK system too long after oil has appeared on the rails. If oil begins to appear on the rails and the lubrication system continues to pump out more oil without the movers moving, oil drips away and is wasted. Once oil appears on the rails, moving the movers allows the mover cams to distribute the oil onto the rails, helping prevent dripping from the application sites. |

- 3. While the iTRAK system runs, use the lubrication system to dispense 0.7 cc (0.024 oz) of lubricant onto each rail every 10 minutes. Continue until each rail has been lubricated along the entire perimeter of the track. It may be hard to see if each rail has been lubricated along the entire perimeter of the track. If so, you can check if the rails are fully lubricated as follows:
  - a. Stop the motion of the movers.
  - b. Select a test location on each rail that is farthest from the oil application sites.
  - c. At the test location, on the surface of the rail that contacts the mover roller, touch the rail with a finger, and determine if it is adequately lubricated:
  - If oil is not present, there are signs of rusting, or most of the oil is black, more lubrication is required. If this is true, continue running the lubrication system and the iTRAK system to distribute more oil onto the tracks. It is normal for some oil to become black, so if a small percentage of the oils is black, it does not mean you have to add more lubricant to complete initial lubrication.
  - If oil is present on each rail, and the signs that more lubrication is required are not present, initial lubrication is complete.
  - d. Once initial lubrication is complete, proceed to configure normal operation lubrication.

#### Configure Normal Operation Lubrication with a Customer Provided Oil Bleed System

After initial lubrication has been completed, configure a schedule of lubrication for normal operation of the iTRAK 5730 system. See the general information paragraphs and tables on <u>page 170</u>.

# **iTRAK 5730 System Integrated Safety**

Use this chapter to become familiar with the safe stop functions that are integrated with the iTRAK<sup>®</sup> 5730 system motor modules.

| Торіс   | Page |
|---|------|
| Certification   | 173  |
| Out-of-Box State  | 176  |
| Safe Torque Off Function  | 178  |
| Safe Torque Off (STO) Specifications                              | 180  |
| Understand Safe Torque Off (STO) Behavior in an iTRAK 5730 System | 182  |
| Timed SS1 Stopping Function                                       | 182  |
| Motion Direct Commands in Motion Control Systems                  | 187  |
| Explicit Messages   | 192  |
| Troubleshoot the Safe Stop Function                               | 198  |
| Understand Integrated Safety Motor Module Replacement             | 198  |
| Replace an Integrated Safety Motor Module in a GuardLogix System  | 199  |

The iTRAK 5730 system motor modules (catalog numbers 2198T-L20-T03*xx-xxx*-S2) are equipped for integrated Safe Torque Off and timed SS1 stopping functions over the EtherNet/IP<sup>™</sup> network. Section-based safety functions operate in the motor modules and are activated through the network safety connection.

# Certification

The TÜV Rheinland group has certified the iTRAK 5730 motor modules (catalog numbers 2198T-L20-T03*xx-xxx*-S2) with support for Safe Torque Off and Timed SS1 safety functions. These safety functions are for use in safetyrelated applications up to Performance Level e (PLe) per ISO 13849-1, and Category 3, SIL 3 per IEC 61508, EN/IEC 61800-5-2, and SIL CL 3 EN/IEC 62061. Removing the motion-producing power is considered to be the safe state.

For product certifications currently available from Rockwell Automation, go to website <u>rok.auto/certifications</u>.

#### Important Safety Considerations

You, the system user, are responsible for the following:

- Validation of any sensors or actuators that are connected to the system
- Completing a machine-level risk assessment
- Certification of the machine to the desired ISO 13849-1 Performance Level or EN/IEC 62061 SIL level
- Project management and proof testing performed in accordance with ISO 13849-1

#### **Safety Application Requirements**

Safety application requirements include evaluating probability of failure rates (PFH), system reaction time settings, and functional verification tests that fulfill SIL 3 criteria. See <u>Probability of Dangerous Failure Per Hour</u> on <u>page 175</u> for more PFH information.

Creating, recording, and verifying the safety signature is also a required part of the safety application development process. Safety signatures are created by the safety controller. The safety signature consists of an identification number, date, and time that uniquely identifies the safety portion of a project. The safety portion of a project includes all safety logic, safety data, and safety I/O configuration.

For safety system requirements, including information on the safety network number (SNN), verifying the safety signature, and functional verification tests, see the GuardLogix<sup>®</sup> 5580 and Compact GuardLogix 5380 Controller Systems Safety Reference Manual, publication <u>1756-RM012</u>.

**IMPORTANT** You must read, understand, and fulfill the requirements that are detailed in publication <u>1756-RM012</u> before operating a safety system that uses a GuardLogix controller and motor module.

#### Category 3 Requirements According to ISO 13849-1

Safety-related parts are designed with these attributes:

- A single fault in any of these parts does not lead to the loss of the safety function.
- A single fault is detected whenever reasonably practicable.
- Accumulation of undetected faults can lead to the loss of the safety function and a failure to remove motion-producing power from the motor.

#### **Stop Category Definition**

You must complete a risk assessment to determine the selection of a stop category for each stop function.

- Stop Category 0, as defined in EN/IEC 60204-1 or Safe Torque Off (STO) as defined by EN/IEC 61800-5-2, is achieved with immediate removal of power to the actuator, which results in an uncontrolled coast-to-stop.
- Stop Category 1, as defined in EN/IEC 60204-1 or Safe Stop 1 (Timed SS1) as defined by EN/IEC 61800-5-2, is achieved with power available to the machine actuators to achieve the stop. Power is removed from the actuators when the configured stop is achieved.

#### Performance Level (PL) and Safety Integrity Level (SIL)

For safety-related control systems, Performance Level (PL), according to ISO 13849-1, and Safety Integration Level (SIL), according to EN/IEC 61800-5-2, include a rating of the systems ability to perform its safety functions. All safety-related components of the control system must be included in both a risk assessment and the determination of the achieved levels.

See the ISO 13849-1, IEC 61508, and EN/IEC 62061 standards for complete information on requirements for PL and SIL determination.

#### **Probability of Dangerous Failure Per Hour**

Safety-related systems are classified as operating in a High-demand/ continuous mode. The SIL value for a High-demand/continuous mode safetyrelated system is directly related to the probability of a dangerous failure occurring per hour (PFH) within the type B 1002 architecture.

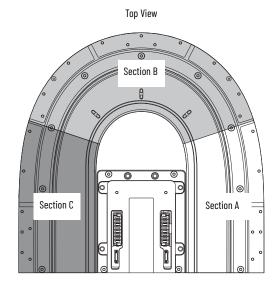
The PFH calculation is based on the equations from IEC 61508, and shows worst-case values. <u>Table 32</u> provides data for a 20-year proof test interval and demonstrates the worst-case effect of various configuration changes on the safety parameters data.

| Attribute     | Value |
|---------------|-------|
| PFH (1e-9/h)  | 3.63  |
| MTTFd (years) | 110   |
| HFT           | 1     |

Table 32 - Safety Parameters for 20-year Proof Test Interval

A straight motor module (catalog number 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2) is composed of one logical section. A curved motor module (catalog number 2198T-L20-T0309-D18-S2) is composed of three logical sections within a single module as shown in <u>Figure 40 on page 176</u>. The PFH value in <u>Table 32</u> applies to each logical section of the curved motor module individually.

#### Figure 40 - Curved Motor Module Logical Sections



**IMPORTANT** Determination of safety parameters is based on the assumptions that the system operates in high-demand/continuous mode and that the safety function is tested at least once every 3 months as per SIL 3, PLe category 3.

### **Out-of-Box State**

The iTRAK 5730 motor modules ship in the out-of-box state.



**ATTENTION:** In the out-of-box state, the STO function allows motion-producing power unless an integrated safety connection configuration has been applied to the motor module at least once.

In the out-of-box state, you can configure iTRAK 5730 motor modules in the following ways:

- Without a GuardLogix 5580 or Compact GuardLogix 5380 safety controller for a standard application
- With a GuardLogix 5580 or Compact GuardLogix 5380 safety controller when the STO function is not required

### **Out-of-Box State Support**

After the integrated safety connection configuration is applied to the iTRAK 5730 motor module at least once, you can restore the motor module to the out-of-box state.

Use a GuardLogix 5580 or Compact GuardLogix 5380 safety controller and follow these steps to restore your iTRAK 5730 motor module to the out-of-box state.

- 1. Right-click the iTRAK 5730 motor module that you created and choose Properties.
- 🔺 🚄 I/O Configuration

▲ ■ 1756 Backplane, 1756-A4
 [□] [0] 1756-L84ES CIP\_Safety\_Controller
 ▲ [] [1] 1756-EN3TR ENET\_1
 ▲ 器 Ethernet
 ▲ 2198T-W25K-ER iPS
 ➡ TIRAK 5730 Section1
 ➡ TIRAK 5730 Section2
 [] 1756-EN3TR ENET\_1

2. In the Module Properties dialog box, click the Connection tab.

The Connection tab appears.

| Module Properties: ENET_1 (iTRA | AK 5730 12.001) ×                           |                                 |             |            | • |
|---------------------------------|---|---------------------------------|-------------|------------|---|
| General                         | Connection                                  |                                 |             |            |   |
| Connection                      | John John                                   |                                 |             |            |   |
| Safety                          |   |                                 |             |            |   |
| - Time Sync                     |   |                                 |             |            |   |
| Module Info                     |   | Requested Packet Interval (RPI) | Connection  |            |   |
| Internet Protocol               | Name  | (ms)                            | over        |            |   |
| Port Configuration              |   |                                 | EtherNet/IP |            |   |
| Network                         |   |                                 |             |            |   |
| - Motion                        | Safety Input                                | 10 💠 Set on Safety Page         | Unicast 🧹   |            |   |
| - Associated Axes               | Safety Output                               | 20 💠 Set by Safety Task         | N/A         |            |   |
| Power                           | B_MotionSync2                               | 2.0 🚖 Set by Motion Group       | Unicast 🗸   |            |   |
| Diagnostics                     |   |                                 |             |            |   |
| Cyclic Read/Write               |   |                                 |             |            |   |
| Track Configuration             |   |                                 |             |            |   |
| Motion Safety                   |   |                                 |             |            |   |
| Actions                         |   |                                 |             |            |   |
| STO                             |   |                                 |             |            |   |
| SS1                             |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 | ✓ Inhibit Module                            |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 | Major Fault On Controller If Connection Fai | ls While in Run Mode            |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 | Module Fault                                |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
|                                 |   |                                 |             |            |   |
| 1                               |   |                                 |             |            | 1 |
| Status: Offline                 |   | 01                              | <b>O</b>    |            |   |
| Status, Unine                   |   | ОК                              | Cancel      | Apply Help |   |

- 3. Check Inhibit Module.
- 4. Click Apply.
- 5. Click the Safety tab.

The Safety tab appears.

| General              | Safety   |
|----------------------|--|
| Connection           |  |
| - Safety             |  |
| - Time Sync          | Connection Requested Packet Connection Reaction Max Observed |
| - Module Info        | Type Interval (RPI) (ms) Time Limit (ms) Network Delay (ms)  |
| - Internet Protocol  | Safety Input 10 1 40.1 Reset Advanced                        |
| - Port Configuration | Safety Output 20 60.0 Reset                                  |
| - Network            |  |
| - Motion             |  |
| - Associated Axes    | Configuration Ownership: Local                               |
| Power                | Reset Ownership +  |
| Diagnostics          |  |
| Cyclic Read/Write    | Conferentian Directory                                       |
| Track Configuration  | Configuration Signature:                                     |
| Motion Safety        | ID: 7cb1_2533 (Hex) Copy                                     |
| Actions              |  |
| - STO                | Date: 12/10/2019   |
| SS1                  | Date. 12/10/2013   |
|                      | Time: 5:54:11 PM 🔶 906 🖕 ms                                  |
|                      | Time: 5:54:11 PM 🗘 906 🛊 ms                                  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |
|                      |  |

6. In the Configuration Ownership field, click Reset Ownership.

**IMPORTANT** Only authorized personnel should use the Reset Ownership function.

If any active connection is detected, the reset is rejected.

7. Cycle power.

The motor module is in the out-of-box state.

integrity is lost.

| IMPORTANT | If power to the motor module is not cycled after <u>step 6</u> , the module does not transition to the out-of-box state and maintains STO function. |
|-----------|---|
|           |   |
| IMPORTANT | When the motor module returns to the out-of-box state, STO safety   |

## **Safe Torque Off Function**

The Safe Torque Off (STO) function, when used with suitable safety components, provides protection according to ISO 13849-1 (PLe), Category 3 or according to IEC 61508, EN/IEC 61800-5-2, and EN/IEC 62061 (SIL CL 3). All components in the system must be chosen and applied correctly to achieve the desired level of operator safeguarding.

The STO feature is designed to safely turn off all output-power transistors. You can use the STO feature in combination with other safety devices to achieve Stop Category 0 and protection-against-restart as specified in EN/IEC 60204-1.



**ATTENTION:** The STO feature is designed to restrict motion-producing power on the drive system or affected area of a machine. The STO feature does not provide electrical safety.



**SHOCK HAZARD:** In STO mode, hazardous voltages can still be present at the drive. To avoid an electric shock hazard, disconnect power to the system and verify that the voltage is zero before performing any work on the drive.



**ATTENTION:** Personnel responsible for the application of safety-related programmable electronic systems (PES) shall be aware of the safety requirements in the application of the system and shall be trained in using the system.

### Safe Torque Off (STO) Function Operation

The STO function provides a method, with sufficiently low probability of failure, to force the power-transistor control signals to a disabled state. When the command to execute the STO function is received from the GuardLogix controller, all drive output-power transistors are released from the ON-state. This release from the ON-state results in a condition in which the drive coasts. Disabling the power transistor output does not provide mechanical isolation of the electrical output that is required for some applications.

The iTRAK 5730 motor module response time to a request of the STO function is less than 10 ms. The response time to a request is the delay between the time that the motor module receives the integrated safety packet with an STO request, and the time when the function begins to execute.

The safety function execution time is the amount of time for the safety function to complete execution. The safety function execution time depends on user configurations of the safety function and the periodic rate at which the motor module executes the safety function. The motor module executes the safety function at a periodic rate of 3 ms.

The total safety function completion time can be considered as the safety function response time to request plus the safety function execution time. Table 33 provides a STO total safety function completion time example.

#### Table 33 - Safe Torque Off (STO) - Safety Function Completion Time Example

| STO Response Time to Request (T $_{\rm RRT}$  | 10 ms                       |  |
|---|-----------------------------|--|
| STO Execution Time (T <sub>ET</sub> )         | 17 ms (rounded up to 18 ms) |  |
| Total STO Completion Time (T <sub>TCT</sub> ) | 28 ms                       |  |

(1) The user-configurable delay time is rounded up to the nearest integer multiple of 3 ms.



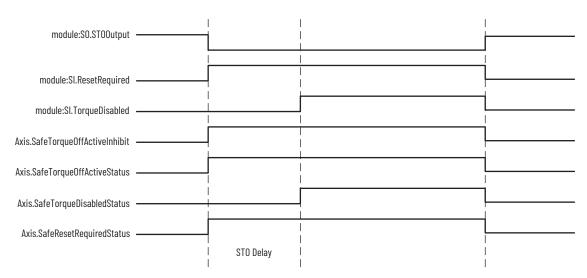
ATTENTION: A hazard of personal injury or equipment damage exists. When these two conditions exist, a limited amount of mover movement can occur:
Two simultaneous faults occur in the IGBT circuit of an iTRAK motor module section
A mover is located within 33.8 mm (1.33 in.) of the affected coil

### Safe Torque Off (STO) State Reset

The iTRAK 5730 motor modules support automatic restart only for exiting the STO state. Automatic restart indicates that torque is allowed only by transitioning the SO.STOOutput tag from 0 to 1. The SO.ResetRequest tag is used only for resetting safety faults.

**IMPORTANT** iTRAK 5730 motor modules enter the STO state if any STO function fault is detected.

<u>Figure 41</u> provides a timing diagram for an automatic restart of an iTRAK 5730 motor module in an STO state.



#### Figure 41 - iTRAK 5730 Motor Module STO Timing Diagram

# Safe Torque Off (STO) **Specifications**

This table provides specifications for the STO network.

#### Studio 5000 Logix Designer® Value Attribute Tag Name N/A Safety connection RPI, min 6 ms N/A Input assembly connections 3 Output assembly connections N/A N/A Integrated safety open request support Type 1 and Type 2 requests Bit 0: Safety fault Axis.SafetyFaultStatus Bit 1: Safety reset request Axis.SafetyResetRequestStatus Bit 2: Safety Reset Required Axis.SafetyResetRequiredStatus Axis safety status Bit 3: Safe Torque Off active Axis.SafeTorqueOffActiveStatus Bit 4: Safe torque disabled Axis.SafeTorqueDisabledStatus N/A Bit 5...31: Undefined (0) Axis.SafetyCoreFault Bit 1: Safety core fault Axis.SafeTorqueOffFault Bit 3: Safe Torque Off fault Axis safety faults All others: Undefined (0) N/A

#### Table 34 - Safe Torque Off (STO) Network Specifications

### Safe Torque Off (STO) Assembly Tags

In integrated STO mode, a GuardLogix 5580 or Compact GuardLogix 5380 safety controller commands the iTRAK 5730 Safe Torque Off function through the appropriate tag in the safety output assembly.

The SO.Command tags are sent from the GuardLogix safety output assembly to the iTRAK 5730 safety output assembly to control the Safe Torque Off function.

The SI.SafeStatus tags are sent from the iTRAK 5730 motor module axis to the GuardLogix safety input assembly and indicate the iTRAK 5730 safety control status.

The SI.ConnectionStatus tags indicate the safety input connection status.

<u>Table 35</u> lists the safety tags that are added to the controller tags when a iTRAK 5730 motor module section axis is added to a GuardLogix I/O Configuration and the connection is configured for Motion and Safety or Safety Only.

# **IMPORTANT** The SO.STOOutput and SO.ResetRequest tag names change when Motion Safety in the Module Definition is configured as Safe Stop Only - No Feedback.

The attribute values in <u>Table 35</u> are the Assembly Object attribute values.

| Table 35 - | iTRAK 5730 Inte | arated Safe Torc | ue Off (STO) S | pecifications |
|------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|
|            |                 |                  |                |               |

| Studio 5000 Logix Designer<br>Tag Name | Attribute<br>[bit] | Туре | Description  |
|--|--------------------|------|--|
| SI.ConnectionStatus <sup>(1) (2)</sup> | -                  | DINT | -  |
| SI.RunMode                             | [0]                | BOOL | Combinations of the RunMode and ConnectionFaulted  |
| SI.ConnectionFaulted                   | [1]                | BOOL | states   |
| SI.SafeStatus <sup>(1) (3)</sup>       | -                  | SINT | -  |
| SI.TorqueDisabled                      | [0]                | BOOL | 0 = Torque Permitted<br>1 = Torque Disabled        |
| SI.SafetyFault                         | [6]                | BOOL | 0 = STO fault not present<br>1 = STO fault present |
| SI.RestartRequired                     | [7]                | BOOL | 0 = Reset is not required<br>1 = Reset is required |
| SO.Command <sup>(1) (4)</sup>          | -                  | SINT | -  |
| S0.ST00utput                           | [0]                | BOOL | 0 = Disable Permit<br>1 = Permit Torque            |
| SO.ResetRequest                        | [7]                | BOOL | 0> 1 = Reset STO fault                             |

(1) Bits not listed are always zero.

(2) ConnectionStatus is determined by the Safety Validator in the GuardLogix controller.

(3) Status is sent from the drive to the controller using the integrated safety protocol.

(4) Commands are sent from the controller to the drive using the integrated safety protocol.

**IMPORTANT** Only the data that is listed in <u>Table 35</u> is communicated with SIL 3 integrity.

## Safe Torque Off (STO) Mode

You can use the attribute STO Mode to check if an iTRAK 5730 motor module axis is in STO Bypass mode. STO Bypass mode is used to allow motion while commissioning or troubleshooting a system when Motion Direct Commands (MDC) are needed.

#### Table 36 - Safe Torque Off (STO) Mode: MSG

| Parameter    | Value | Description  |
|--------------|-------|--|
| Service Code | 0x0E  | Get attribute single                                 |
| Class        | 0x5A  | Safety stop functions                                |
| Instance     | 1     | Motor-module safety instance associated with an axis |
| Attribute    | 0x104 | STO mode   |
| Data Type    | SINT  | Short integer  |

#### Table 37 - Safe Torque Off (STO) Mode: Values

| Value | Definition       |
|-------|------------------|
| 1     | Normal operation |
| 2     | STO bypass mode  |

# Understand Safe Torque Off (STO) Behavior in an iTRAK 5730 System

Similar to a multi-axis servo drive system, the STO function is requested for each individual section axis in an iTRAK 5730 system. Therefore, each motor module section in an iTRAK 5730 system must receive an STO request from the GuardLogix controller to place the entire iTRAK 5730 system into the STO state.

Depending on your application, particularly in large iTRAK 5730 systems, it can be desirable to define a safety zone within which the STO function is enabled on discrete motor module sections of the system. In this case, it is possible that movers that are in motion on an enabled motor module section can travel onto a motor module section that is in the STO state.

**IMPORTANT** The STO function is configured for each motor module section (axis) independently. As a result, movers in motion on enabled motor module sections can travel onto a motor module section that is in the STO state. You must consider the consequences of active mover motion on enabled sections of an iTRAK 5730 system that are next to a motor module section that is in the STO state.

# **iTRAK 5730 System Safety Considerations**



**ATTENTION:** A hazard of personal injury and equipment damage exists in an iTRAK system that does not enable the STO function on all motor module sections (axis). Consider an MSF stopping action of Coast to Stop and Disable or mechanical guards for motor module sections that are next to a motor module section that enables the STO function.

# **Functional Safety Considerations**



**ATTENTION:** Before maintenance work can be performed in Program mode, the developer of the application must consider the implications of allowing motion through motion direct commands and should consider developing logic for run-time maintenance operations to meet the requirements of machine safety operating procedures.



**ATTENTION:** Motion is allowed when motion direct commands are used in Program mode and the STO function is not available. Motion direct commands issued when the controller is in Program mode causes the drive to bypass the STO Active condition. It is your responsibility to implement additional preventive measures to maintain safety integrity of the machinery during execution of motion direct commands in Program mode.



**ATTENTION:** To avoid personal injury and damage to equipment if there is an unauthorized access or unexpected motion during authorized access, return the controller to RUN mode and remove the key before leaving the machine unattended.

The Timed SS1 function meets the requirements of Performance Level e (PLe) per ISO 13849-1 and SIL CL 3 per IEC 61508, EN/IEC 61800-5-2, and EN/IEC 62061.

In Timed SS1 mode, the GuardLogix 5580 or Compact GuardLogix 5380 safety controller issues the SS1 command over the EtherNet/IP network and the iTRAK 5730 motor module section executes the SS1 command.

# Timed SS1 Stopping Function

The Timed SS1 function commands the motor-module axis to stop in a fixed amount of time. The Timed SS1 function does not monitor the speed of the mover axis or whether a mover is stopped.

Setting the SS1 Request tag in the motor-module axis Safety Output Assembly initiates the Timed SS1 function. When the Timed SS1 function is initiated, these actions occur:

- 1. The motor-module axis receives the SS1 Request
- 2. The motor-module axis safety status is updated to SS1 Active (high = 1)
- 3. The controller stops the axis within the SS1 Max Stop Time
- 4. When the SS1 Max Stop Time expires, SS1 Complete transitions to high (1)
- 5. The STO function is performed

### **Safety Function Operation**

The iTRAK 5730 motor module response time to a request of the SS1 function is less than 10 ms. The response time to a request is the delay between the time when the iTRAK motor module receives the integrated safety packet with an SS1 request and the time when the function begins executing.

The safety function execution time is the amount of time for the safety function to complete execution. The safety function execution time depends on the user configuration of the safety function and the periodic rate at which the iTRAK 5730 motor module executes the safety function. The iTRAK 5730 motor module executes the safety function at a periodic rate of 3 ms.

The total safety function completion time can be considered as the safety function response time to request plus the safety function execution time. <u>Table 38</u> provides a Timed SS1 total safety function completion time example.

Table 38 - Timed Safe Stop (SS1) - Safety Function Completion Time Example

| SS1 Response Time to Request (T $_{\rm RRT}$ )    |  | 10 ms                       |
|---|--|-----------------------------|
| SS1 Execution Time (T <sub>ET</sub> )             | User-configurable SS1 Max Stop Time <sup>(1) (2)</sup> | 19 ms (rounded up to 21 ms) |
| STO Execution Time (T <sub>ET</sub> )             | User-configurable STO Delay Time <sup>(1)</sup>        | 17 ms (rounded up to 18 ms) |
| Total SS1/STO Completion Time (T <sub>TCT</sub> ) |  | 49 ms                       |

(1) The user-configurable delay time is rounded up to the nearest integer multiple of 3 ms.

(2) Max Stop Time is configured on the SS1 page of the Module Properties and can be read via Attribute 291 (Class 0x5A). The maximum is 4,294,967,296 ms.

In this example, we describe how a motion and safety control system operates and how motion and safety tasks are coordinated. In typical motion and safety system applications, an E-stop switch is used to stop the system. In the following example, the switch is used to initiate the process that brings the axis to a controlled stop before removing power. This type of stop is called Stop Category 1. The motion task and motor module axis are responsible for bringing the axis to a Category 1 stop. This sequence of events represents the steps that are required for a Timed SS1 safety function.



The words *module*, *instance*, and *axis* (italic) in these steps represent the module, instance, and section axis name assigned in the Studio 5000 Logix Designer application (also called the Studio 5000<sup>®</sup> application).

- 1. The safety task reads the E-stop input and detects the switch actuation.
- 2. The safety task communicates an SS1 request by setting the bit: *module*:SO.SS1Request[*instance*] tag of the motor module axis motion-safety instance.
- 3. The motion-safety instance in the motor module axis communicates to the motor module axis motion core of the Axis Safety Status.
- 4. The motion core communicates with the motion controller running the motion task by updating the motion axis tag *axis*.SS1ActiveStatus.
- 5. The motion task controls the axis to bring the motor to a stop within the SS1 time limit.
- 6. When the configured SS1 time lapse has completed, the motion-safety core activates the STO function.

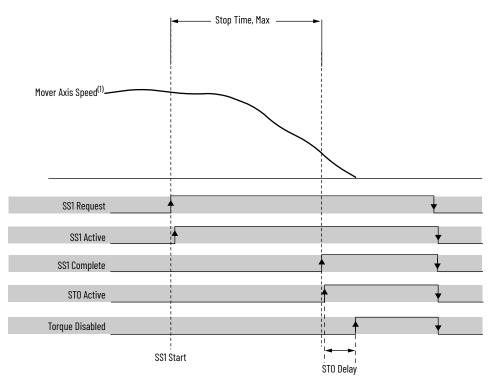
Series of events when an SS1 fault occurs.

1. If an SS1 fault occurs, STO Active goes high (1), and Torque Disabled goes high (1) immediately and ignores STO Delay.

The safety instance detects a fault and activates the STO function within 6.0 ms of when the fault condition occurred.

- 2. Restart Required goes high (1) whenever an SS1 fault is present.
- 3. To reset the SS1 fault, SS1 Request must go low (0), followed by Reset (0-1 transition).

#### Figure 42 - Timed SS1 Normal Operation



(1) Mover axis speed is independent of motor section axis safety control.

| Attribute Name  | Tag Name                           | Description   | Value                                       |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|---|---|
| SS1 Request     | module:S0.SS1Request[instance]     | An Output Assembly member that requests the motor module axis to initiate its Safe Stop 1 function.                         | 0 - No Request<br>1 - Request               |
| SS1 Active      | module:S0.SS1Active[instance]      | The SS1 Active attribute is set to Active when any bit in SS1 Activation is set.  | 0 – Not Active<br>1 – Active                |
| SS1 Complete    | Tag Name does not apply.           | When the SS1 timer expires, the SS1 Complete bit is set, setting STO Active.  | 0 – Not Active<br>1 – Active                |
| STO Active      | module:SI.STOActive[instance]      | When the SS1 timer expires, the STO Activation bit and SS1 Complete are set, setting STO Active.                            | 0 – Not Active<br>1 – Active                |
| Torque Disabled | module:SI.TorqueDisabled[instance] | When the drive output transistors are released from the ON state and force-producing power has been removed from the motor. | 0 – Torque Permitted<br>1 – Torque Disabled |

The Timed SS1 safety function design, which includes the STO function, has a SIL 3/PLe category 3 rating.



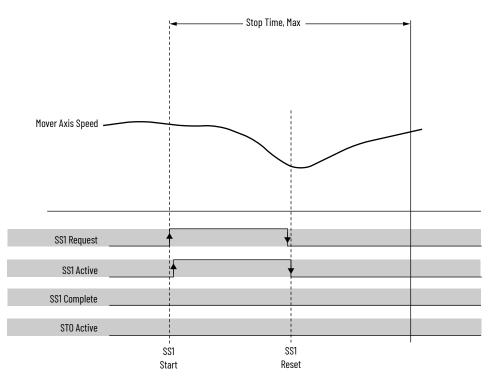
The words *module* and *instance* (italic) in these tag names represent the module name and instance name that are assigned in the Studio 5000 application.

| IMPORTANT | If there is a malfunction, the most likely stop category is Stop Category O. When designing the machine application, timing and distance must be considered for a coast-to-stop. For more information regarding stop categories, see EN/IEC 60204-1. |
|-----------|--|
|           |  |
| IMPORTANT | If multiple safety functions are requested simultaneously, the first to reach the Safe Torque Off state takes precedence.  |

## **Timed SS1 Request Removed**

This figure shows what happens when a Timed SS1 Request goes low (0) before completion.

#### Figure 43 - Timed SS1 Request Removed Before Completion



| Attribute Name | Tag Name                       | Description   | Value                         |
|----------------|--------------------------------|---|-------------------------------|
| SS1 Request    | module:S0.SS1Request[instance] | An Output Assembly member that requests the motor module axis to initiate its Safe Stop 1 function.           | 0 - No Request<br>1 - Request |
| SS1 Active     | module:S0.SS1Active[instance]  | The SS1 Active attribute is set to Active when any bit in SS1 Activation is set.                              | 0 - Not Active<br>1 - Active  |
| SS1 Complete   | Tag Name does not apply.       | When the SS1 timer expires, the STO Activation bit SS1 Complete is set, setting STO Active to Disable Torque. | 0 - Not Active<br>1 - Active  |
| STO Active     | module:SI.STOActive[instance]  | When the SS1 timer expires, the STO Activation bit SS1 Complete is set, setting STO Active to Disable Torque. | 0 - Not Active<br>1 - Active  |



The words *module* and *instance* (italic) in these tag names represent the module name and instance name that are assigned in the Studio 5000 application.

Series of events when SS1 Request is removed before completion.

- 1. When SS1 Request goes low (0) before completion, SS1 function is reset and ready for another operation.
- 2. Main task reads the SS1 Active axis tag and resumes normal operation.

# Motion Direct Commands in Motion Control Systems

You can use the Motion Direct Command (MDC) feature to initiate motion while the controller is in Program mode, independent of application code that is executed in Run mode. These commands let you perform various functions, for example, move an axis, jog an axis, or home an axis.

A typical use might involve a machine integrator testing different parts of the motion system while the machine is being commissioned. Another use might be a maintenance engineer, under certain restricted scenarios in accordance with safe machine operating procedures, wanting to move an axis (like a conveyor) to clear a jam before resuming normal operation.



- **ATTENTION:** To avoid personal injury or damage to equipment, follow these rules regarding Run mode and Program mode.
- Only authorized, trained personnel with knowledge of safe machine operation should be allowed to use Motion Direct Commands
- Additional supervisory methods, like removing the controller keyswitch, should be used to maintain the safety integrity of the system after returning the safety controller to RUN mode

## **Understand STO Bypass When Using Motion Direct Commands**

If a Safety-only connection between the GuardLogix safety controller and the iTRAK 5730 motor module was established at least once after the module was received from the factory, the module does not allow motion while the safety controller is in Program mode by default.

This default setting is used because the safety task is not executed while the GuardLogix safety controller is in Program mode. This applies to applications running in a single-safety controller (with Motion and Safety connections). When an integrated safety motor module has a Motion connection to a standard controller and a separate Safety connection to a dual-safety controller, the standard controller can transition to Program mode while the safety controller stays in Run mode and continues to execute the safety task.

However, motor module systems are designed with a bypass feature for the STO function in single-safety controller configurations. You can use the MDC feature to allow motion while following all necessary and prescribed steps per machine safety operating procedures.



**ATTENTION:** Consider the consequences of allowing motion by using MDC when the controller is in Program mode. You must acknowledge warning messages in the Studio 5000 application that warn of the module bypassing the STO function and unintended motion can occur. The integrated safety module does not respond to the request of STO function if MDC mode is entered.



**ATTENTION:** It is your responsibility to maintain machine safety integrity while executing motion direct commands. One alternative is to provide ladder logic for Machine Maintenance mode that leaves the controller in Run mode with safety functions executing.

## **Studio 5000 Application Warning Messages**

When the controller is in Run mode, executing safety functions, one or more motor modules follow the commands that they receive from the safety controller. Safety state = Running, Axis state = Stopped/Running, as shown in Figure 44.

| Figure 44 - Safety State Indications When | n Controller is in Run Mode (safety tasl |
|---|--|
| executing)                                |  |

| nands:   | Motion Axis St                        | ор                |  |              |
|--|---------------------------------------|-------------------|--|--------------|
| Motion State   | Axis:                                 | axis 1            |  | -            |
| - Re MSO<br>- Re MSF   | Label                                 |                   | Operand                                    |              |
| - S MASD   | Stop Type                             |                   | All  |              |
| B- HACD  | Change Decel                          |                   | No   |              |
| MDO  | Decel Rate                            |                   | 100  |              |
| - C MDF  | Decel Units                           |                   | Units per sec2                             |              |
| - C MDS  | Change Decel J                        | lerk              | Yes  |              |
| MAFR   | Decel Jerk                            |                   | 100  |              |
|  |                                       |                   | % of Time                                  |              |
| Motion Move  | Jerk Units                            |                   | A OF TIME                                  |              |
| Motion Move<br>Motion Move<br>MAS<br>MAH<br>MAJ  | DANGER:<br>Program o Execution Error. | r Run Mode may ca | ommand with controller is use axis motion. |              |
| Motion Move<br>WMAH<br>WMAJ<br>WMAJ<br>WMAG<br>WMCD<br>WMCP<br>MRP<br>Motion Group                         | DANGER     Program o                  |                   | ommand with controller in                  | n<br>Running |
| Motion Move<br>- & MAS<br>- & MAJ<br>- & MAJ<br>- & MAG<br>- & MCD<br>- & MRP<br>- Motion Group<br>- & MGS | DANGER:<br>Program o Execution Error. | r Run Mode may ca | ommand with controller is use axis motion. |              |

When the controller transitions to Program mode, the integrated safety motor modules are in the safe state (torque not permitted). Safety state = Not Running, Axis state = Start Inhibited, as shown in Figure 45).

| ommands:  |      | Motion Ser | rvo On  |      |
|---|------|------------|---|------|
| 🧐 MSO<br>😵 MSF                                  | ^    | Axis:      | axis1   |      |
| الله الله الله الله الله الله الله الله         | m    |            |   |      |
| MAS<br>MAH<br>MAJ<br>一般 MAG<br>一般 MAG<br>一般 MRD | 4    |            | SER: Executing motion command with<br>am or Run Mode may cause axis mot |      |
| MCD   | -    | Progr      |   | ion. |
|   | ults |            |   |      |

Figure 45 - Safety State Indications After Controller Transitions to Program Mode

When you issue a motion direct command to an axis to produce torque in Program mode, for example MSO or MDS, with the safety connection present to the motor modules, a warning message is presented before the motion direct command is executed, as shown in Figure 46.

Figure 46 - STO Bypass Prompt When the Safety Controller is in Program Mode

| motor torque. Ensure that preventative measures are in place to<br>maintain safety integrity of machinery.<br>Do you want to permit motor torque while safety controller is in | Â | Drive is not in correct state to allow requested operation on '[HPI]'.  |
|--|---|---|
|  | • | preventing motor torque. Safe Torque Off may be bypassed to permit<br>motor torque. Ensure that preventative measures are in place to |
| Program Mode and perform the operation?  |   | Do you want to permit motor torque while safety controller is in<br>Program Mode and perform the operation?                           |

The warning in <u>Figure 46</u> is displayed the first time a motion direct command is issued.

After you acknowledge the warning message by clicking Yes, torque is permitted by the motor modules and a warning message is indicated in the software as shown in <u>Figure 47</u>. Safety state = Not Running (torque permitted), Axis state = Stopped/Running, Persistent Warning = Safe Torque Off Bypassed.

| IMPORTANT | Switch the controller to Run mode to exit Motion Direct Command mode with |
|-----------|---|
|           | the STO function bypassed.  |

| ommands:  |   | Motion Se | ervo On  |
|---|---|-----------|--|
| 《 MSO<br>《 MSF<br>《 MASD<br>《 MASD<br>《 MOS<br>《 MDF<br>《 MDS<br>《 MAFR | ш | Axis:     | axis1 🔹 🗔  |
| W MAS<br>W MAH<br>W MAJ<br>W MAG<br>W MAG<br>W MCD                      |   |           | NGER: Executing motion command with controller in<br>gram or Run Mode may cause axis motion. |
|   |   |           | Safe Torque Off bypassed   |
|   |   |           | Safety State: Not Running (Torgue Permitted)   |

# Figure 47 - Safety State Indications After Controller Transitions to Program Mode (MDC executing)

| IMPORTANT | The persistent warning message text 'Safe Torque Off bypassed' appears when a motion direct command is executed.   |
|-----------|--|
|           | The warning message persists even after the dialog box is closed and<br>reopened as long as the integrated safety motor modules are in STO Bypass<br>mode. |
|           | The persistent warning message is removed only after the integrated safety motor modules are restored to the safe state.                                   |

# **Torque Permitted in a Multi-workstation Environment**

The warning in <u>Figure 48</u> displays to notify a second user working in a multiworkstation environment that the first user has placed the integrated safety motor modules in the STO state and that the current action is about to bypass the STO state and permit torque.

#### Figure 48 - STO Bypass Prompt When MDC is Issued in Multi-workstation Environment

| Drive is permitting motor torque while the safety controller is in Program Mode |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Safe Torque Off safety function is currently bypassed.                          |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| Do you want to perform requested operation in this state?                       |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

### Warning Icon and Text in Axis Properties

In addition to the other warnings that require your acknowledgment, the Studio 5000 application also provides warning icons and persistent warning messages in other Axis Properties dialog boxes when the integrated safety motor modules are in STO Bypass mode.

Figure 49 - Axis and Safe State Indications on the Hookup Services Dialog Box

| wis State:  | Stopped | Safety State: | Not Running (Torque Permitted) |    |        |       |      |  |
|-------------|---------|---------------|--------------------------------|----|--------|-------|------|--|
| Manual Tune | ]       | 1             | Safe Torque Off bypassed       | OK | Cancel | Apply | Help |  |

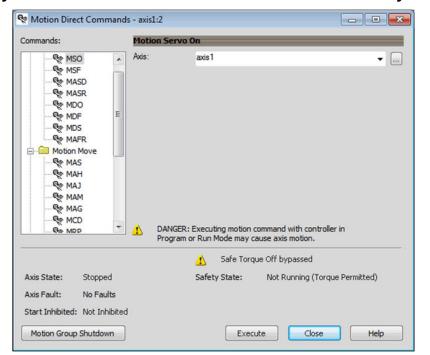


Figure 50 - Axis and Safe State Indications on Motion Direct Commands Dialog Box

Figure 51 - Axis and Safe State Indications on the Motion Console Dialog Box

| Manual Tuning        |         |                  |         | Reset                     | Motion Generat       | or         |                   | Ma             | ore Commands       |
|----------------------|---------|------------------|---------|---------------------------|----------------------|------------|-------------------|----------------|--------------------|
|                      | 3.5212  | 4                | -0      | + Hertz                   | Commands             |            | Motion Servo O    | n              |                    |
| Bandwidth:           |         | 0.0              |         | 47.0                      | Se MSO               |            |                   |                |                    |
| System 1<br>Damping: | 0       |                  | 0       | •                         | - 🌪 MSF<br>- 😍 MAH   |            |                   |                |                    |
| Tuning Config        | uration | 0.8              |         | 1.5                       | - Ce MAJ<br>- Ce MAM |            |                   |                |                    |
| Position Loop        |         |                  |         |                           | - Se MAS             |            |                   |                |                    |
| Loop Bandwidth:      |         | 18.52124         | -       | +Hertz                    | - 😪 MDS              |            |                   |                |                    |
| Integrator Bandy     | vidth:  | 0.0              | -       | +Hertz                    | - 😪 MAFR             |            |                   |                |                    |
| Integrator Hold:     |         | Disabled         | •       | +                         |                      |            |                   |                |                    |
| Error Tolerance:     |         | 0.94524145       | ٢       | Position Units            |                      |            | notion command wi |                |                    |
| Velocity Loop -      |         |                  |         |                           | Program or           | r Run Mode | may cause axis mo | tion.          |                    |
| Loop Bandwidth:      |         | 74.08496         | -       | +Hertz                    | Execution Error.     |            | 1                 | Safe Torque Of | f bypassed         |
| Integrator Bandu     | idth:   | 0.0              | -       | <ul> <li>Hertz</li> </ul> | Axis State:          | Stopped    | Safety State:     | Not Running    | (Torque Permitted) |
| Integrator Hold:     |         | Disabled         | -       | •                         | Axis Fault:          | No Faults  | 1                 |                |                    |
| Error Tolerance:     |         | 26.317974        | -       | ←Position Units/s         | Start Inhibited:     | Not Inhib  | aited             |                |                    |
| 🔥 DANGER: Tunir      | ig may  | result in unstab | ole axi | s motion.                 | Execute              | Disab      | le Axis           |                |                    |
| V Additional Tune    |         |                  |         |                           | 1                    |            |                   |                |                    |
|                      |         |                  |         |                           |                      |            |                   | Close          | Help               |

## **Explicit Messages**

Use explicit messages to communicate with a drive and obtain additional fault, status, or configuration information that is not available in the Safety I/O Tag structure. Attribute data is useful for additional diagnostic information. An explicit message can be sent by any controller on the network and used to read any drive module attribute. See <u>Table 42</u> on page <u>193</u> for the drive-module safety attribute names, and numbers to read the attribute values by using an MSG instruction. See <u>Figure 52</u> on <u>193</u> to see how explicit messages are part of motion and safety communication.

When an explicit message is used, a class ID must be specified. The class ID identifies the safety object type in the drive module that is accessed.

Table 39 - Object Classes Available in Motion Safety Instances

| Object Class        | Object Instances |
|---------------------|------------------|
| Safety Supervisor   | 1                |
| Safe Stop Functions | 1                |

**IMPORTANT** Explicit messages must not be used for any safety-related function.

#### Safety Supervisor State

In the motor module, the connection to the safety instance or instances is controlled by a safety supervisor. The supervisor status can be read by the motion controller through the motion connection and the safety controller through the Safety Input Assembly or by an explicit message.

The safety supervisor state provides information on the state of the integrated safety connection and the mode of operation. There is only one safety supervisor object per motor module.

| Parameter                  | Value                                   | Description          |  |  |
|----------------------------|---|----------------------|--|--|
| Service Code               | 0x0E                                    | Get attribute single |  |  |
| Class                      | 0x39                                    | Safety supervisor    |  |  |
| Instance                   | nce 1 Motor-module :<br>associated with |                      |  |  |
| Attribute 0x0B Device stat |   | Device status        |  |  |
| Data Type                  | SINT                                    | Short integer        |  |  |

Table 40 - Safety Supervisor State: MSG

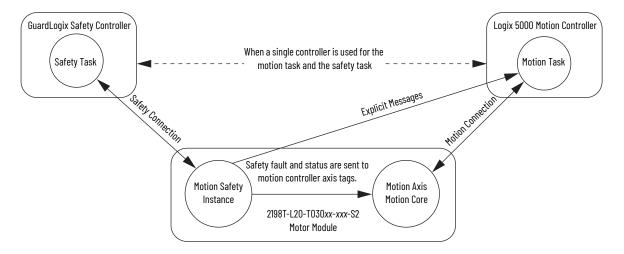
#### Table 41 - Safety Supervisor States

| Value | Safety Supervisor State           | Definition                              | Safety Mode |
|-------|-----------------------------------|---|-------------|
| 2     | Configured (no safety connection) | No active connections                   | Integrated  |
| 4     | Running                           | Normal running state                    | Integrated  |
| 7     | Configuring                       | Transition state                        | Integrated  |
| 8     | Not Configured                    | Awaiting safety controller<br>ownership | Out-of-box  |
| 51    | Not Configured (torque permitted) | Out-of-box state, safety not<br>used    | Out-of-box  |
| 52    | Running (torque permitted)        | STO bypass state                        | Integrated  |

### **Safe Monitor Network Communication**

The safe monitor network executes motion and safety tasks by using the CIP<sup>™</sup> protocol.





#### Motion Connection

The motion connection communicates motor module axis motion and safety status to the motion task. The motion connection also receives motion commands from the motion task in the motion controller. Data is exchanged at a periodic rate over the connection. To configure the motor-module axis motion connection Axis Properties in the Studio 5000 application, see <u>Chapter 7 - iTRAK 5730 System Integrated Safety</u> on page <u>173</u> for detailed instructions.

Some of the axis tags are updated from the fault and safety status that is provided by the safety instance in the motor module. The safety instance sends this status to the motion core and then on to the motion controller. Axis tags show the updated status. See Figure 52 on page 193 for an illustration on how status is sent to the motion controller.

**IMPORTANT** Axis tags are for status only and are not used by the safety function.

| Axis Tag Name<br>(motion controller) | Motion<br>Connection<br>Attribute # | Data Type | Description   | Safety Output Assembly Tag Name<br>(safety controller) |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|---|--|
| Axis.AxisSafetyState                 | 760                                 | DINT      | Motor module Safety Supervisor state. See the <u>Safety</u><br><u>Supervisor State</u> on <u>192</u> for more details.                                    | None   |
| Axis.AxisSafetyStatus                | 761                                 | DINT      | Collection of bits indicating the status of the standard<br>safety functions for the axis as reported by Motor Module<br>Safety Instance.                 | See individual bits in <u>Table 43</u> on <u>194</u> . |
| Axis.AxisSafetyStatusRA              | 762                                 | DINT      | Collection of bits indicating the status of Rockwell<br>Automation specific safety functions for the axis as<br>reported by Motor Module Safety Instance. | See individual bits in <u>Table 43</u> on <u>194</u> . |

#### Table 42 - Motion Connection Axis Tags

#### Table 42 - Motion Connection Axis Tags (Continued)

| Axis Tag Name<br>(motion controller) | Motion<br>Connection<br>Attribute # | Data Type | Description   | Safety Output Assembly Tag Name<br>(safety controller) |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|---|--|
| Axis.AxisSafetyFaults                | 763                                 | DINT      | Collection of bits indicating the Safety Fault status of the<br>drive-module safety instances and integrated safety<br>functions. | See individual bits in <u>Table 43</u> on <u>194</u> . |
| Axis.AxisSafetyFaultsRA              | 764                                 | DINT      | Collection of bits indicating the safety fault status of Rockwell Automation safety functions.                                    | See individual bits in <u>Table 43</u> on <u>194</u> . |
| Axis.AxisSafetyAlarms                | 753                                 | DINT      | Reserved for future use.  | _  |

<u>Table 43</u> provides motion-connection axis tag names that are updated to show safety instance status or controller-based safety function status.



The words *module*, *instance*, and *axis* (italic) in these tag names represent the module, instance, and axis name assigned in the Studio 5000 application.

#### Table 43 - Motion Connection Axis Tag Names

| Axis Tag Name<br>(motion controller) | Motion<br>Connection<br>Attribute Number | Data Type | Description   | Safety Output Assembly Tag Name<br>(safety controller) |
|--------------------------------------|--|-----------|---|--|
| Axis.AxisSafetyStatus                | 761                                      | DINT      | Collection of bits indicating the status of the standard safety functions for the axis as reported by Motor Module Safety Instance.   | See individual bits below.                             |
| Axis.SafetyFaultStatus               | [0]                                      | BOOL      | Any Safe Stop Fault occurring in the Safety Instance.<br>0 = Not Faulted<br>1 = Safety Fault  | None   |
| Axis.SafetyResetRequestStatus        | [1]                                      | BOOL      | Indicates the state of the reset request output from the<br>safety controller (in the safety output assembly)<br>connected with the Motor-module Safety Instance. The<br>value of Axis.SafetyResetRequestStatusis the reset input<br>to the safety instance in the motor module.<br>0 = Reset Request OFF<br>1 = Reset Request ON | module:S0.ResetRequest[instance]                       |
| Axis.SafetyResetRequiredStatus       | [2]                                      | BOOL      | Indicates that the drive-module safety instance that is<br>associated with this Axis requires a reset of the safety<br>function.<br>0 = Normal<br>1 = Reset Required  | None   |
| Axis.SafeTorqueOffActiveStatus       | [3]                                      | BOOL      | Indicates that the state of the STO output from the safety<br>controller, which is the STO input to the motor-module<br>safety instance associated with this axis.<br>0 = STO Output Is active<br>1 = STO is not active, STO is not requested   | module:S0.ST00uput[instance]                           |
| Axis.SafeTorqueDisabledStatus        | [4]                                      | BOOL      | Indicates that the motor-module safety instance Torque<br>Disabled Status.<br>0 = Axis power structure is not inhibited by the safety<br>instance<br>1 = Axis power structure is inhibited  | None   |
| Axis.SS1ActiveStatus                 | [7]                                      | BOOL      | Indicates that the controller-based or the motor module-<br>based SS1 function is active.<br>0 = SS1 Function is not Active<br>1 = SS1 Function is Active   | module:S0.SSActive[instance]                           |
| Axis.SOSActiveStatus                 | [9]                                      | BOOL      | Indicates that the controller-based SOS function is<br>active.<br>0 = SOS Function is not Active<br>1 = SOS Function is Active  | module:S0.S0SActive[instance]                          |
| Axis.SOSStandstillStatus             | [10]                                     | BOOL      | Indicates that the controller-based SOS function has<br>detected standstill according to the function<br>configuration.<br>0 = monitored axis is not at Standstill<br>1 = monitored axis is at standstill   | module:S0.S0SLimit[instance]                           |
| Axis.SMTActiveStatus                 | [11]                                     | BOOL      | Always 0. This function is not available  | None   |
| Axis.SMTOvertemperatureStatus        | [12]                                     | BOOL      | Always O. This function is not available.   | None   |
| Axis.SSMActiveStatus                 | [16]                                     | BOOL      | For use with a controller-based SSM function.   | module:S0.SSMActive[instance]                          |

| Axis Tag Name<br>(motion controller)        | Motion<br>Connection<br>Attribute Number | Data Type | Description   | Safety Output Assembly Tag Name<br>(safety controller) |  |
|---|--|-----------|---|--|--|
| Axis.SSMStatus                              | [17]                                     | BOOL      | For use with a controller-based SSM function.   | module:S0.SSMStatus[instance]                          |  |
| Axis.SLAActiveStatus                        | [20]                                     | BOOL      | Always 0. This function is not available.   | None   |  |
| Axis.SLALimitStatus                         | [21]                                     | BOOL      | Always 0. This function is not available.   | None   |  |
| Axis.SDIActiveStatus                        | [22]                                     | BOOL      | Indicates that the controller-based SDI function is active.<br>0 = SDI Function is not Active<br>1 = SDI Function is Active   | module:S0.SDIActive[instance]                          |  |
| Axis.SDILimitStatus                         | [23]                                     | BOOL      | Indicates that the controller-based SDI function detected<br>motion greater than the limit in the unintended direction.<br>0 = Limit not reached<br>1 = Unintended motion   | module:S0.SDILimit[instance]                           |  |
| Axis.SafePositiveMotionStatus               | [24]                                     | BOOL      | Always 0. This function is not available.   | None   |  |
| Axis.SafeNegativeMotionStatus               | [25]                                     | BOOL      | Always 0. This function is not available.   | None   |  |
| Axis.SCAActiveStatus                        | [26]                                     | BOOL      | For use with a controller-based SCA function.   | module:SO.SCAActive[instance]                          |  |
| Axis.SCAStatus                              | [27]                                     | BOOL      | For use with a controller-based SCA function.   | module:SO.SCAStatus[instance]                          |  |
| Axis.SLPActiveStatus                        | [28]                                     | BOOL      | Indicates that the controller-based SLP function is<br>active.<br>0 = SLP Function is not Active<br>1 = SLP Function is Active  | module:SO.SLPActive[instance]                          |  |
| Axis.SLPLimitStatus                         | [29]                                     | BOOL      | Indicates that the controller-based SLP function has<br>detected the monitored axis position outside of the<br>setpoint limits.<br>0 = axis position is within the limits<br>1 = axis position is outside of the limits | module:S0.SLPLimit[instance]                           |  |
| Axis.SafetyOutputConnectionClosed<br>Status | [30]                                     | BOOL      | Indicates the safety connection status from the<br>controller to the motor module.<br>0 = connection open<br>1 = connection closed  | None   |  |
| Axis.SafetyOutputConnectionIdleSta<br>tus   | [31]                                     | BOOL      | Indicates the safety connection status from the<br>controller to the motor module.<br>0 = connection active<br>1 = connection idle  | None   |  |
| Axis.AxisSafetyStatusRA                     | 762                                      | DINT      | Collection of bits indicating the status of Rockwell<br>Automation specific safety functions for the axis as<br>reported by Motor-module Safety Instance.   | See individual bits below.                             |  |
| Axis.SafeBrakeIntegrityStatus               | [0]                                      | BOOL      | Status of an external safety brake controlled by SBC<br>instruction.<br>The brake status, which can be either released or<br>engaged, is undetermined.<br>0 = SBC fault<br>1 = No faults detected                       | module:SO.SBCIntegrity[instance]                       |  |
| Axis.SafeFeedbackHomedStatus                | [1]                                      | BOOL      | Status of the controller-based SFX position homing function.  | module:S0.SFHome[instance]                             |  |
| Axis.AxisSafetyFaults                       | 763                                      | DINT      | Collection of bits indicating the Safety Fault status of the motor-module safety instances and integrated safety functions.   | See individual bits below.                             |  |
| Axis.SafetyCoreFault                        | [0]                                      | BOOL      | Indicates that an internal fault occurred within the<br>motor-module safety instance. If there are dual-axis<br>inverters, both safety instances fault.<br>0 = Normal Operation<br>1 = Fault                            | None (use explicit message)                            |  |
| Axis.SafetyFeedbackFault                    | [2]                                      | BOOL      | Indicates that a fault occurred with the safety feedback<br>or with the safety dual-channel feedback.<br>0 = Normal Operation<br>1 = Fault  | None (use explicit message)                            |  |
| Axis.SafeTorqueOffFault                     | [3]                                      | BOOL      | Indicates that a fault occurred within the STO function of<br>the motor-module safety instance.<br>0 = Normal Operation<br>1 = Fault  | None (use explicit message)                            |  |
| Axis.SS1Fault                               | [4]                                      | BOOL      | Indicates that a fault occurred with the motor module-<br>based or a controller-based SS1 function.<br>0 = Normal Operation<br>1 = Fault  | module:S0.SSFault[instance]                            |  |

| Axis Tag Name<br>(motion controller) | Motion<br>Connection<br>Attribute Number | Data Type | Description  | Safety Output Assembly Tag Name<br>(safety controller) |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|-----------|--|--|--|
| <i>Axis</i> .SSMFault                | [16]                                     | BOOL      | Controller-based SSM fault.<br>0 = Normal Operation<br>1 = Fault                               | module:S0.SSMFault[instance]                           |  |
| Axis.SLSFault                        | [17]                                     | BOOL      | Controller-based SLS fault.<br>0 = Normal Operation<br>1 = Fault                               | module:S0.SLSFault[instance]                           |  |
| Axis.SLAFault                        | [18]                                     | BOOL      | Always O. This function is not available.  | -  |  |
| Axis.SDIFault                        | [19]                                     | BOOL      | Controller-based SDI fault.<br>0 = Normal Operation<br>1 = Fault                               | module:S0.SDIFault[instance]                           |  |
| Axis.SCAFault                        | [20]                                     | BOOL      | Controller-based SCA fault.<br>0 = Normal Operation<br>1 = Fault                               | module:S0.SCAFault[instance]                           |  |
| Axis.SLPFault                        | [21]                                     | BOOL      | Controller-based SLP fault.<br>0 = Normal Operation<br>1 = Fault                               | module:S0.SLPFault[instance]                           |  |
| Axis.AxisSafetyFaultsRA              | 764                                      | DINT      | Collection of bits indicating the safety fault status of Rockwell Automation safety functions. | See individual bits below.                             |  |
| Axis.SFXFault                        | [1]                                      | BOOL      | Controller-based SFX fault.<br>0 = Normal Operation<br>1 = Fault                               | module:S0.SFXFault[instance]                           |  |

#### Table 43 - Motion Connection Axis Tag Names (Continued)

#### Safety Connection

The safety controller communicates with the safety instances in the motor module over the safety connection. Cyclic data are passed in each direction over the safety connection that appears in Safety Controller tag structures that are called input and output assemblies. The safety connection cyclic rate is configured in the Studio 5000 application. The Safety Input Assembly tag structure is data from the motor module safety instances to the safety controller. The Safety Output Assembly tag structure is data from the safety controller to the motor module safety instances. There is only one safety assembly per motor module, so a different assembly structure is used for single-axis and dual-axis inverters.

#### Table 44 - Safety Input Assembly Tags

| Safety Input Assembly Tag Name<br>(input to safety controller) | Type/[bit] | Description  |  |  |
|--|------------|--|--|--|
| module:SI.ConnectionStatus                                     | SINT       | See individual bits in <u>Table 46</u> on <u>197</u> . |  |  |
| module:SI.StopStatus[instance]                                 | SINT       | See individual bits in <u>Table 46</u> on <u>197</u> . |  |  |
| module:SI.SafeStatus[instance]                                 | SINT       | See individual bits in <u>Table 46</u> on <u>197</u> . |  |  |
| module:SI.FunctionSupport[instance]                            | SINT       | See individual bits in <u>Table 46</u> on <u>197</u> . |  |  |

#### Table 45 - Safety Output Assembly Tags

| Safety Output Assembly Tag Name<br>(output to safety controller) | Type/[bit] | Description  |
|--|------------|--|
| <pre>module:S0.SafetyStopFunctions[instance]</pre>               | SINT       | See individual bits in <u>Table 47</u> on <u>198</u> . |

Safety assembly tags are associated with a safety connection from a safety controller to a motor module. The data in these tags are communicated at the configured connection rate.



The words *module* and *instance* (italic) in these tag names represent the module name and instance name that are assigned in the Studio 5000 application.

Data from the motor module to the safety controller is in the safety input assembly. Data from the safety controller to the motor module is in the safety output assembly.

| Safety Input Assembly Tag Name<br>(input to safety controller) | Type/[bit] | Description   |
|--|------------|---|
| module:SI.ConnectionStatus                                     | SINT       | Collection of bits listed below.  |
| module:SI.RunMode  | [0]        | Safety Connection 0= idle 1 = Run   |
| module:SI.ConnectionFaulted                                    | [1]        | Safety Connection 0=normal 1= Faulted   |
| module:SI.StopStatus[instance]                                 | SINT       | Collection of bits listed below.  |
| module:SI.STOActive[instance]                                  | [0]        | Indicates STO function status.<br>0 = STO function not active<br>1 = STO function active  |
| module:SI.SBCActive[instance]                                  | [1]        | Always O  |
| module:SI.SS1Active[instance]                                  | [2]        | Indicates drive-based SS1 active status.<br>0 = SS1 function not active<br>1 = SS1 function active                              |
| module:SI.SS2Active[instance]                                  | [3]        | Always O  |
| module:SI.SOSStandstill[instance]                              | [4]        | Always O  |
| module:SI.SafetyFault[instance]                                | [6]        | 1 = Safe Stop Fault present   |
| module:SI.RestartRequired[instance]                            | [7]        | 1 = Reset is required   |
| module:SI.SafeStatus[instance]                                 | SINT       | Collection of bits listed below.  |
| module:SI.TorqueDisabled[instance]                             | [0]        | 0 = Torque Permitted<br>1 = Torque Disabled   |
| module:SI.BrakeEngaged[instance]                               | [1]        | Always O  |
| module:SI.MotionStatus[instance]                               | SINT       | Collection of bits listed below.  |
| module:SI.MotionPositive[instance]                             | [0]        | Always O  |
| module:SI.MotionNegative[instance]                             | [1]        | Always O  |
| module:SI.FunctionSupport[instance]                            | SINT       | Collection of bits listed below.  |
| module:SI.PrimaryFeedbackValid[instance]                       | [0]        | Always O  |
| module:SI.SecondaryFeedbackValid[instance]                     | [1]        | Collection of bits listed below.  |
| module:SI.DiscrepancyCheckingActive[instance]                  | [2]        | Always O  |
| module:SI.SBCReady[instance]                                   | [3]        | Always O  |
| module:SI.SS1Ready[instance]                                   | [4]        | 0 = Drive-based SS1 function is not configured or faulted<br>1 = Drive-based SS1 function is configured and ready for operation |
| module:SI.SS2Ready[instance]                                   | [5]        | Always O  |
| module:SI.SOSReady[instance]                                   | [6]        | Always O  |

#### Table 46 - Safety Input Assembly Tag Names

#### Table 47 - Safety Output Assembly Tag Names

| Safety Output Assembly Tag Name<br>(output to safety controller) | Type/<br>[bit] | Description   |
|--|----------------|---|
| module:S0.SafetyStopFunctions[instance]                          | SINT           | A collection of bits used to activate (request) safety functions as listed below. |
| module:S0.ST00utput[instance]                                    | [0]            | 0 = Activate STO Function<br>1 = Permit Torque                                    |
| module:S0.SBCOutput[instance]                                    | [1]            | Drive-based function not available, set to 0.                                     |
| module:S0.SS1Request[instance]                                   | [2]            | 0 = Remove SS1 Request<br>1 = Activate Drive-based SS1 Function                   |
| module:S0.SS2Request[instance]                                   | [3]            | Drive-based function not available, set to 0.                                     |
| module:S0.S0SRequest[instance]                                   | [4]            | Drive-based function not available, set to 0.                                     |
| module:S0.ResetRequest[instance]                                 | [7]            | 0 -> 1 transition resets the drive-based Safe Stop function.                      |

# Troubleshoot the Safe Stop Function



Knowledgebase Answer ID <u>1092901</u> iTRAK 5730 System Fault Codes has the fault codes. Download the spreadsheet from this public article. You might be asked to log in to your Rockwell Automation web account, or create an account if you do not have one. You do not need a support contract to access the article.

# Understand Integrated Safety Motor Module Replacement

GuardLogix controllers retain the I/O device configuration onboard and are able to download the configuration to the replacement device.

**IMPORTANT** If an iTRAK 5730 motor module was used previously, clear the existing configuration before installing it on a safety network by resetting the module to its out-of-box condition. See <u>Out-of-Box State Support</u> on <u>page 176</u> for instructions.

You must reconfigure a replacement motor module that is part of an integrated safety network due to the unique SNN assigned to each device.

The device number and SNN compose the safety device's DeviceID. Safety devices require this more complex identifier to make sure that duplicate device numbers do not compromise communication between the correct safety devices. The SNN is also used to provide integrity when the configuration is initially downloaded to the motor module.

When the Studio 5000 application is online, the Safety tab of the Module Properties dialog box displays the current configuration ownership. When the opened project owns the configuration, 'Local' is displayed.

Configuration Ownership: Local

'Communication error' is displayed if the module read fails. See <u>Replace an</u> <u>Integrated Safety Motor Module in a GuardLogix System</u> on <u>page 199</u> for integrated safety module replacement information.

# Replace an Integrated Safety Motor Module in a GuardLogix System

When you replace an integrated safety motor module, you must configure the device properly and verify the operation of the replacement motor module.



**ATTENTION:** During module replacement or functional test, the safety of the system must not rely on any portion of the affected motor module.

Two options for safety motor module replacement are available on the Safety tab of the Controller Properties dialog box in the Studio 5000 application:

- Configure Only When No Safety Signature Exists
- Configure Always

#### Figure 53 - Safety Motor Module Replacement Options

| General Ma  | ajor Faults   | Minor Faults        | Date/Time | Advanced         | SFC Exe | cution Project |
|---|---------------|---------------------|-----------|------------------|---------|----------------|
| Safety*   | Nonve         | platile Memory      | Capacity  | Sec              | urity   | Alarm Log      |
| Safety Application:   | Unlocked      |                     | S         | afety Lock/Unloc | ж       |                |
| Safety Status:  |               |                     |           |                  |         |                |
| Safety Signature:   |               |                     |           | Generate         | +       |                |
| ID: <none< td=""><td>&gt;</td><td></td><td></td><td>Сору</td><td></td><td></td></none<> | >             |                     |           | Сору             |         |                |
| Date:<br>Time:  |               |                     |           | Delete           | •       |                |
| Protect Sign  | nature in Run | Mode                |           |                  |         |                |
| When replacing Sa   | afety I/O:    |                     |           |                  |         |                |
| Configure C   | only When No  | Safety Signature Ex | ists      |                  |         |                |
| Configure A   | lways         |                     |           |                  |         |                |

## **Configure Only When No Safety Signature Exists**

This setting instructs the GuardLogix controller to automatically configure a safety motor module only when the safety task does not have a safety task signature, and the replacement module is in an out-of-box condition, meaning that an SSN does not exist in the safety module.

If the safety task has a safety task signature, the GuardLogix controller automatically configures the replacement CIP Safety<sup>™</sup> I/O device only if the following is true:

- The device already has the correct SSN.
- The device electronic keying is correct.
- The node or IP address is correct.

For detailed information, see the 'Replace a Safety I/O Device' procedure in the user manual for the controller:

- ControlLogix 5580 and GuardLogix 5580 Controllers User Manual, publication <u>1756-UM543</u>
- CompactLogix 5380 and Compact GuardLogix 5380 User Manual, publication <u>5069-UM001</u>

## **Configure Always**

When the Configure Always feature is enabled, the controller automatically checks for and connects to a replacement motor module that meets all of the following requirements:

- The controller has configuration data for a compatible motor module at that network address
- The motor module has an SNN that matches the configuration



**ATTENTION:** Enable the Configure Always feature only if the entire integrated safety control system is not being relied on to maintain SIL 3 behavior during the replacement and functional testing of an iTRAK 5730 system. If other parts of the integrated safety control system are being relied upon to maintain SIL 3, make sure that the controller's Configure Always feature is disabled. It is your responsibility to implement a process to make sure that proper safety functionality is maintained during device replacement.



**ATTENTION:** Do not place any devices in the out-of-box condition on any integrated safety network when the Configure Always feature is enabled, except while following the device replacement procedure in the appropriate user manual for your Logix 5000° controller:

- ControlLogix 5580 and GuardLogix 5580 Controllers User Manual, publication <u>1756–</u> <u>UM543</u>
- CompactLogix 5380 and Compact GuardLogix 5380 User Manual, publication <u>5069-</u> <u>UM001</u>

# **Update the iTRAK 5730 System Firmware**

This appendix provides procedures to update your iTRAK 5730<sup>®</sup> system firmware.

| Торіс                      | Page |
|----------------------------|------|
| Before You Begin           | 201  |
| Update Your Firmware       | 203  |
| Verify the Firmware Update | 213  |

You can upgrade your iTRAK 5730 system firmware by using ControlFLASH Plus<sup>™</sup> or ControlFLASH<sup>™</sup> software. To upgrade the firmware, you must configure your communication software (such as RSLinx<sup>®</sup> software), select the motor module to upgrade, and complete the firmware upgrading procedure.



We recommend that you use ControlFLASH Plus software for firmware updates. See the ControlFLASH Plus Quick Start Guide, publication <u>CFP-0S001</u>, for more information.

# **Before You Begin**

For firmware updates, you must use the software versions shown in <u>Table 48</u>.

#### Table 48 - iTRAK 5730 System Requirements

| Description  | Version           |
|--|-------------------|
| ControlFLASH software kit <sup>(1)</sup>                   | 15.03.00 or later |
| ControlFLASH Plus software kit <sup>(1)</sup>              | 3.01 or later     |
| FactoryTalk® Linx software <sup>(2)</sup>                  | 6.00.00 or later  |
| RSLinx software <sup>(3)</sup>                             | 4.20.00 or later  |
| Studio 5000 Logix Designer $^{\odot}$ application $^{(4)}$ | 33.00.00 or later |

 Download the ControlFLASH kit from the Product Compatibility and Download Center at: <u>rok.auto/pcdc</u>. For more ControlFLASH information (not iTRAK 5730 specific), refer to the ControlFLASH User Manual, publication <u>1756-UM105</u>.

(2) Only required when using ControlFLASH Plus software.

(3) Only required when using ControlFLASH software.

(4) Also called the Studio  $5000^{\circ}$  application.

Gather the following information before you begin your firmware update.

- Network path to the targeted iTRAK 5730 modules you want to update.
- Catalog numbers of the targeted iTRAK 5730 modules you want to update.

IMPORTANTAll connector modules must be connected and secured to the motor modules.<br/>Control power must be connected to the power and control input connector<br/>module and power input with a control pass-through connector module (if<br/>used), before updating the firmware.IMPORTANTFor the iTRAK 5730 system, the following status indicators must be flashing<br/>green:

- Motor modules network (NET) and module (MOD)
- Connector modules status (STS), speed (SPD), and DC status (DC STS)



**ATTENTION:** To avoid personal injury or damage to equipment during the firmware update due to unpredictable motor activity, do not apply three-phase AC or common-bus DC input power to the iTRAK system.

## **Inhibit the Module**

You must inhibit the iTRAK 5730 module before performing the firmware update. Follow these steps to inhibit a module.

- 1. Open your Studio 5000 application.
- 2. Right-click the iTRAK 5730 module you configured and choose Properties.

| 🖧 mov1          | ^                 |   |  |  |  |
|-----------------|-------------------|---|--|--|--|
| Sec1            |                   |   |  |  |  |
| ≡ Ungroup       | ed Axes           |   |  |  |  |
| 👂 📕 Alarm Mana  | ager              |   |  |  |  |
| Assets          |                   |   |  |  |  |
| h. Logical Mo   | del               |   |  |  |  |
| 🔺 🚄 I/O Configu | ration            |   |  |  |  |
| 🔺 📟 1756 Bao    | kplane, 1756-A4   |   |  |  |  |
| 📴 [0] 17        | 56-L85E iTRAK     |   |  |  |  |
| 🔺 🖞 [1] 17      | 56-EN3TR en3tr    |   |  |  |  |
| ▲ 윪 Eth         | ernet             |   |  |  |  |
| 1               | 2198T-W25K-ER IPS |   |  |  |  |
| 1               | 2198-P031 dfe     |   |  |  |  |
| 0               | iTRAK 5730 ISF1   |   |  |  |  |
| 9               | 1756-EN3TR en3tr  | ~ |  |  |  |
| Associated Axes |                   |   |  |  |  |
| Sec1            |                   |   |  |  |  |
| 💪 mov1          |                   |   |  |  |  |
| Description     |                   |   |  |  |  |
| Power Structure | iTRAK 5730        |   |  |  |  |
| Status          | Offline           |   |  |  |  |
| Module Fault    |                   |   |  |  |  |
|                 |                   |   |  |  |  |
| <               |                   | > |  |  |  |

The Module Properties dialog box appears.

3. Select the Connection page.

|             |                                | General<br>Connection*  | Connection  |   |   |   |  |  |               |
|-------------|--------------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|--|--|---------------|
|             |                                | Time Sync<br>Module Info<br>Internet Protocol<br>Port Configuration   |   | Name  |   | Requested Packet Interval<br>(RPI) (ms)   | Connection over<br>EtherNet/IP           |  |               |
|             |                                | Motion  | B MotionSync2   |   |   | 2.0 🚖 Set by Motion Gro   | Unicast 🗸                                |  |               |
|             |                                | <ul> <li>Associated Axes</li> <li>Power</li> <li>Diagnostics</li> <li>Cyclic Read/Write</li> <li>Track Configuration</li> </ul> |   |   |   |   |  |  |               |
|             |                                |   | ✓ Inhibit Module<br>☐ Major Fault On Co                             | ntroller If Connection Fai                    | is While in Run Mode                        |   |  |  |               |
|             |                                |   | Module Fault  |   |   |   |  |  |               |
|             |                                | •   | Check Inhil<br>Click OK.  | oit Module.                                   |   |   |  |  |               |
|             |                                | 2   | Save your file and download the program to the controller.          |   |   |   |  |  |               |
|             |                                |   | Verify that the network (NET) and module (MOD) status indicators on |   |   |   |  |  |               |
|             |                                | 7.  | the motor r   | nodules are                                   | flashing                                    | green.  | (OD) stat                                | us marcate                                       | 513 011       |
| Update Your | Firmware                       | •   | To upgrade<br><u>ControlFLA</u><br>To upgrade                       | your firmv<br><u>SH Plus to</u><br>your firmv | vare by us<br><u>Update Y</u><br>vare by us | olFLASH to u<br>ing ControlFl<br>our iTRAK 573<br>ing ControlFl<br>TRAK 5730 Sy | LASH Plu<br><u>30 Syster</u><br>LASH, se | ıs, see <u>Use</u><br>n Firmware<br>e <u>Use</u> | <u>e</u> .    |
|             |                                | Use Co  | ontrolFLAS  | H Plus to L                                   | Jpdate Y                                    | our iTRAK 57  | 730 Syst                                 | tem Firmw  | vare          |
|             |                                | Follow  | these steps   | to select the                                 | e iTRAK 5                                   | 730 system m  | odule to                                 | upgrade.   |               |
|             |                                |   | Start Contr   |   |   | ,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,   |  | 10   |               |
|             |                                | 1.  | You<br>you  | i can choose to                               | select and i                                | upgrade the firmw<br>, only one module  |  |  |               |
|             |                                | 2.  | On the Flas<br>'Browsing f  | h Devices p<br>rom path,' (                   | age, if the<br>complete                     | e device is not<br>these steps:   | already                                  | present in                                       |               |
|             |                                |   | a. click 🖁  | ī -   |   |   |  |  |               |
| Γ           | A ControlFLASH Plus™           |   |   |   |   |   |  | - 0  | ×             |
|             | Flash Devices Manage Firmwa    | are Manage Favorites  | _   |   |   |   | () <u>Refresh Firn</u>                   | nware 🌣 <u>Settings</u>                          | ? <u>Help</u> |
|             | Browsing from path: V33-B51-VI | M!AB_ETH-2\192.168.1.30 (   | (Levels 2) 🏪  |   |   |   | 1 device                                 | Filter by device                                 | V             |
|             | Device                         |   | Address   | In Device                                     | Flash To Lates                              | st on Computer  | •  |  |               |

192.168.1.30

12.002

•

12.002

🕽 iTRAK 5730, iTRAK\_5730

b. In the Network Browser dialog box, locate and select the device to upgrade.

| 🕈 ControlFLASH Plus™                                   |   |             |                   | ×             |
|--|---|-------------|-------------------|---------------|
| Flash Devices Manage Firmw                             | Network Browser   | ×           | e O Settings      | ? <u>Help</u> |
| Browsing from path: V33-B51-V                          | ⊘*₩ ‡ @ @ ? ↓   | Q▼ Search ▼ | er by device      | 7             |
| Device   | ♠ V33-B51-VM  |             |                   |               |
| 🗌 🕽 iTRAK 5730, iTRAK_5                                | <ul> <li>▲ FactoryTalk Linx - Desktop, V33-B51-VM</li> <li>▶ ■ Backplane</li> <li>▲ EtherNet, AB_TH-2</li> <li>▶ ■ 192.168.1.2, FactoryTalk Linx - Desktop, V33-B51-VM</li> <li>▶ ■ 192.168.1.13, 1756-L81ES, iTrak_StraightMotionSafety</li> <li>▶ ■ 192.168.1.13, 1756-EN3TR, 1756-EN3TR/A</li> <li>■ 192.168.1.18, 2198-P031, 2198-P031</li> <li>■ 192.168.1.2, 2198-D036, ERS4, 2198-D006-ERS4</li> </ul> |             |                   |               |
|  | 192.168.1.30, iTRAK 5730, iTRAK_5730  | å C 🏓 🖕     |                   |               |
|  | ▷ 🍰 EtherNet, Ethernet<br>▷ ᡩ USB   |             |                   |               |
|  | Browsing network  | Zoom: 100%  |                   |               |
|  | Populate the device list by selecting a single device, a chassis, or a network.<br>Choose number of levels to browse 2 v  |             |                   |               |
| <ul> <li>Download Center available. Sion in</li> </ul> |   | OK Cancel   | ate Favorite List | Next          |

### c. Click OK.

3. On the Flash Devices tab, verify that the checkbox to the left of the device is checked.

| 🕈 ControlFLA  | SH Plus™            |                      |               |
|---------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------|
| Flash Devices | Manage Firmware     | Manage Favorites     |               |
| Browsing from | path: V33-B51-VM!AB | 2_ETH-2\192.168.1.30 | (Levels: 2) 🚼 |
| Device        |                     |                      |               |
| 🛛 🕽 itra      | K 5730, iTRAK_5730  |                      |               |

- 4. Choose the firmware version you want to use for the update using one of the following methods:
  - If you have already downloaded the firmware, then next to Flash To, choose Latest on Computer and select the version you want.
  - Next to Flash To, choose Latest from Download Center and select the version you want.

| 📌 ControlFLASH Plus™   |              |           |                             |                            | - 0                 | ×             |
|--|--------------|-----------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|---------------------|---------------|
| Flash Devices Manage Firmware Manage Favorites                   |              |           |                             | () <u>Refresh Firmware</u> | e 🗘 <u>Settings</u> | ? <u>Help</u> |
| Browsing from path: V33-B51-VM!AB_ETH-2\192.168.1.30 (Levels: 2) | 0<br>10      |           |                             | 1 selected, 1 device Filte | er by device        | Y             |
| Device   | Address      | In Device | Flash To Latest on Computer | $\rightarrow$              |                     |               |
| itrak 5730, itrak_5730   | 192.168.1.30 | 12.002    | 12.002 -                    |                            |                     |               |
|  |              |           | 12.002                      |                            |                     |               |
|  |              |           |                             |                            |                     |               |
|  |              |           |                             |                            |                     |               |
|  |              |           |                             |                            |                     |               |
|  |              |           |                             |                            |                     |               |
|  |              |           |                             |                            |                     |               |
|  |              |           |                             |                            |                     |               |
|  |              |           |                             |                            |                     |               |
|  |              |           |                             |                            |                     |               |
|  |              |           |                             |                            |                     |               |
|  |              |           |                             |                            |                     |               |
|  |              |           |                             |                            |                     |               |
|  |              |           |                             | Creat                      | te Favorite List    | Next          |
| 😑 Download Center available. <u>Sign in</u>                      |              |           |                             |                            |                     |               |

- 5. Click Next.
- 6. If a warning dialog box appears, read the warning, compete any recommendations, and click Close.

| ControlFLASH Plus™   |              |           |   |                                       | - [                            | ]          |
|--|--------------|-----------|---|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------|
| lash Devices Manage Firmware Manage Favorites  |              |           |   | () <u>Refresh Firr</u>                | <u>mware</u> 🌣 <u>Settings</u> | ? <u>н</u> |
| Danger: The selected modules are about to be updated w<br>controlled by these modules is in a stopped state and that |              |           |   |                                       |                                | ent        |
| Device   | Address      | In Device | Flash To                                    | Status                                |                                |            |
| itrak 5730, itrak_5730   | 192.168.1.30 | 12.002    | 12.002                                      | A Before flashing drive ensure all mo |                                |            |
|  |              |           | warnings in the sta<br>g the flash operatio | n.                                    |                                |            |
|  |              |           |   |                                       |                                |            |
|  |              |           |   |                                       |                                |            |
|  |              |           |   |                                       | rning Flash                    | Can        |

# 7. After acknowledging all warnings and confirming the desired revisions, click Flash.

|                             | H Plus™                                      |  |  |  |   |   | — C                             | ) ×         |
|-----------------------------|--|--|--|--|---|---|---------------------------------|-------------|
| ash Devices                 | Manage Firmware                              | Manage Favorites   |  |  |   | () <u>Refresh Fir</u>   | rmware 🗘 <u>Settings</u>        | ? <u>He</u> |
| Danger: The<br>controlled b | selected modules ar<br>y these modules is in | e about to be updated with n<br>a stopped state and that all | ew firmware. During t<br>safety critical function: | he update, the mo<br>s are not affected. | dules will be unable<br>Also, please make s | e to perform their normal control functions. Ma<br>sure that communications bandwidth is availabl | ike sure that all equipm<br>le. | ent         |
| Device                      |  |  | Address  | In Device                                | Flash To                                    | Status  |                                 |             |
| 🗾 🔋 itrak                   | 5730, iTRAK_5730                             |  | 192.168.1.30                                       | 12.002                                   | 12.002                                      | A Before flashing drive ensure all mo   |                                 |             |
|                             |  |  |  |  |   |   |                                 |             |
|                             |  |  |  |  |   |   |                                 |             |

### A progress bar appears to show the status of the firmware update.

| sh Devices Manage Firmware Manage | Favorites    |           |          |                          | () <u>Refresh Firmw</u> | are 🗘 Settir | igs ? | <u>He</u> |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|-----------|----------|--------------------------|-------------------------|--------------|-------|-----------|
| Flashing 1 device                 |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |
| - Device                          | Address      | In Device | Flash To | Status                   |                         |              |       |           |
| ITRAK 5730, ITRAK_5730            | 192.168.1.30 | 12.002    | 12.002   | Transmitting update 2 of | 2, block 126            |              |       |           |
|                                   |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |
|                                   |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |
|                                   |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |
|                                   |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |
|                                   |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |
|                                   |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |
|                                   |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |
|                                   |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |
|                                   |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |
|                                   |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |
|                                   |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |
|                                   |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |
|                                   |              |           |          |                          |                         |              |       |           |

After the upgrade information is sent to the iTRAK, the iTRAK resets. During the reset, the module (MOD) and network (NET) status indicators on the motor modules change color from flashing green to steady red, or alternately flashing red. After the download, the device will apply the new firmware and restart, which may take several minutes.

```
IMPORTANT Do not cycle power to the iTRAK during this process. A power cycle results in an unsuccessful firmware update and an inoperable module.
```

After the device reboots, ControlFlash Plus will indicate success or failure of the update.

| ControlFLASH Plus <sup>™</sup>                    |                              |           |               |                       | - 🗆 ×                   |
|---|------------------------------|-----------|---------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Flash Devices Manage Firmware Manage Favorites    |                              |           |               | () <u>Refresh Fir</u> | mware 🗘 Settings ? Help |
| Flashing complete: 1 succeeded                    |                              |           |               |                       | Show: All               |
| Device  | Address                      | In Device | Flash To      | Status                |                         |
| 🔲 🔋 iTRAK 5730, iTRAK_5730                        | 192.168.1.30                 | 12.002    | 12.002        | V Flash finished      |                         |
| Show Reports   Download Center available, Sign in | 1 flash atter<br>1 Succeeded |           | ults<br>Close |                       | Done                    |

- 8. When the upgrade has completed, click Close.
- 9. To complete the process and close the application, click Done.

**IMPORTANT** You must clear the Inhibit Module checkbox on the Connection page in the iTRAK 5730 Module Properties dialog box before resuming normal operation.

## Use ControlFLASH to Update Your iTRAK 5730 System Firmware

Follow these steps to select the iTRAK 5730 system module to upgrade.



When static IP addresses are assigned, it is recommended that you upgrade the firmware for the last module in the system. The last module is determined by the highest value of the last octet of the IP addresses. When the last module has been upgraded, continue to upgrade modules in descending IP address order.

## **Configure Your Communication Path with RSLinx**

This procedure assumes that your communication method to the target device is the Ethernet network. It also assumes that any Ethernet communication module or Logix 5000<sup>®</sup> controller in the communication path has already been configured.

For more controller information, see <u>Additional Resources on page 233</u>.

Follow these steps to configure the communications path to the target device.

- 1. Open your RSLinx Classic software.
- 2. From the Communications menu, choose Configure Drivers.

The Configure Drivers dialog box appears.

| onfigure Drivers        |         | ?         |
|-------------------------|---------|-----------|
| Available Driver Types: |         | Close     |
| Ethernet devices        | Add New | Help      |
| Configured Drivers:     |         |           |
| Name and Description    | Status  | [ ]       |
|                         |         | Configure |
|                         |         | Startup   |
|                         |         | Start     |
|                         |         | Stop      |
|                         |         | Delete    |
|                         |         |           |
|                         |         |           |

- 3. From the Available Driver Types pull-down menu, choose Ethernet devices.
- 4. Click Add New.

The Add New RSLinx Classic Driver dialog box appears.

5. Type the new driver name.

| Choose a name for the new driver.<br>(15 characters maximum) | OK     |
|--|--------|
| AB ETH-1   | Cancel |

6. Click OK.

The Configure driver dialog box appears.

| figure d     | river: AB_ETH-1 |         |
|--------------|-----------------|---------|
| ition Mapp   | - 1             |         |
| Station      | Host Name       | Add Nev |
| Station<br>0 | 10.91.36.82     | Add Nev |

- 7. Type the IP address of your Ethernet Module or Controller that bridges between the Ethernet network and the EtherNet/IP network.
- 8. Click OK.

The new Ethernet driver appears under Configured Drivers.

| figure Drivers                   |           | ?         |
|----------------------------------|-----------|-----------|
| Available Driver Types:          |           | Close     |
| Ethernet devices                 | ▼ Add New |           |
| r                                |           | Help      |
| Configured Drivers:              |           |           |
| -                                |           | -         |
| Name and Description             | Status    |           |
| AB_ETH-1 A-B Ethernet RUNNING    | Running   | Configure |
| LocalSubnet A-B Ethernet RUNNING | Running   |           |
|                                  |           | Startup   |
|                                  |           |           |
|                                  |           |           |
|                                  |           | Start     |
|                                  |           | Start     |
|                                  |           | Start     |

- 9. Click Close.
- 10. Minimize the RSLinx application dialog box.

## Start the ControlFLASH Software

Follow these steps to start ControlFLASH and begin your firmware update.

1. In the Studio 5000 application, from the Tools menu, choose ControlFLASH.



You can also open the ControlFLASH software by choosing Start > Programs > FLASH Programming Tools > ControlFLASH.

The Welcome to ControlFLASH dialog box appears.

| Control 1 | Welcome to ControlFLASH, t<br>tool. ControlFLASH needs th<br>information from you before it<br>updating a device.  | e following               |
|-----------|--|---------------------------|
| Control   | <ol> <li>The Catalog Number of the<br/>2.The Network Configuration<br/>(optional).</li> <li>The Network Path to the tar<br/>4.The Firmware Revision for</li> </ol> | parameters<br>get device. |
|           | View Log<br>View Inventory   | ]                         |
|           | Change RSLinx Edition  | In use: RSLinx Classic    |

2. Click Next.

The Catalog Number dialog box appears.

| Catalog Number   |  |
|------------------|--|
| Control<br>FLASH | Enter the catalog number of the target device:<br>iTRAK_5730<br>2198T-L20-T03<br>ITRAK_5730<br>iTRAK_5750C |
|                  | Browse  Browse Cancel Help   |



- If your catalog number does not appear, click Browse, select the monitored folder where the firmware kit (DMK files) is located. Click Add and OK.
- 3. Select your iTRAK module.

In this example, the iTRAK 5730 is selected.

4. Click Next.

The Select Device to Update dialog box appears.

| Select the device to update and click OK  | ×  |
|---|--|
| Autobrowse Refresh  | 192.168.1.20 found   |
| Construction, V33-B45-VM     Construction, V33-B45-VA5-VA5-VA5-VA5-VA5-VA5-VA5-VA5-VA5-VA | 192.168.1.100<br>192.168.1.12<br>1756-EN3T<br>192.168.1.20<br>192.168.1.20<br>192.168.1.21<br>17RAK_5730<br>192.168.1.22<br>192.168.1.25 |
| < >>  | 192.108.1.22 192.108.1.23<br>17RAK_5730<br>192.168.1.26<br>192.168.1.4<br>KNX_TrakSF 2198T-W25   |
|   | OK Cancel  |

- 5. Expand your Ethernet node, Logix backplane, and EtherNet/IP network module.
- 6. Select the iTRAK 5730 system to upgrade.
- 7. Click OK.

| The | e Firmware | Revision | dialog | box appears. |
|-----|------------|----------|--------|--------------|
|-----|------------|----------|--------|--------------|

| Firmware Revision | Catalog Number: iTRAK_5730<br>Serial Number: 00000000<br>Current Revision: 12.002<br>Select the new revision for this update:   |      |
|-------------------|---|------|
| FLASH             | Revision   F   A     12.002   Image: state stat |      |
|                   | Show all revisions           Show all revisions           < Back  | lelp |

- 8. Select the firmware revision to upgrade.
- 9. Click Next.

The Summary dialog box appears.

| Summary | DANGER: The target module is about to be updated<br>with new firmware. During the update the module will be<br>unable to perform its normal control function. Please<br>make sure that all processes affected by this equipment<br>have been suspended and that all safety critical functions<br>are not affected.<br>To abort this firmware update, press Cancel now. To<br>begin the update now, press Finish.<br>Catalog Number: iTRAK_5730 |
|---------|--|
|         | Serial Number: 0000000<br>Current Revision: 12.002<br>New Revision: 12.002   |
|         | More Info  |
|         | <back cancel="" finish="" help<="" td=""></back>   |

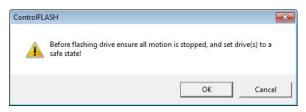
- 10. Confirm the device catalog number and firmware revision.
- 11. Click Finish.

|         | with new fire | The target module<br>mware. During the u<br>perform its normal co | pdate the mod | ule will be<br>Please             |
|---------|---------------|---|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| Control | Are y         | you sure you want<br>ating the target de                          | -             | quipment<br>al functions<br>w. To |
|         | More In       | Yes   | No            |                                   |

This ControlFLASH warning dialog box appears.

12. To complete the update now, click Yes.

This ControlFLASH warning dialog box appears.



13. Acknowledge the warning and click OK.

The Progress dialog box appears and updating begins.

| Catalog Number:<br>Serial Number: | iTRAK_5730<br>00000000        |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Current Revision:                 | 12.002                        |
| New Revision:                     | 12.002                        |
| Transmitting updat                | e 2 of 2, block 3374 of 15178 |
|                                   |                               |

| After the upgrade information is  |
|-----------------------------------|
| sent to the iTRAK, the iTRAK      |
| resets. During the reset, the     |
| module (MOD) and network          |
| (NET) status indicators on the    |
| motor modules change color        |
| from flashing green to steady     |
| red, or alternately flashing red. |

| Catalog Number:<br>Serial Number: | ITRAK_5730<br>00000000                |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Current Revision:                 | 12.002                                |
| New Revision:                     | 12.002                                |
| Polling for power-u               | p Time left until abort: 395 seconds. |
|                                   |                                       |

14. Wait for the Progress dialog box to time out.

It is normal for this process to take several minutes.

**IMPORTANT** Do not cycle power to the iTRAK during this process. A power cycle results in an unsuccessful firmware update and an inoperable module.

- 15. Verify that the module (MOD) and network (NET) status indicators on the motor modules are flashing green.
- 16. Verify that the Update Status dialog box appears and indicates success or failure as described in the following table and image.

| Upgrading Status  |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| Success Update complete appears in a green Status dialog box, then go to <u>step 17</u> . |   |  |
| Failure   | Update failure appears in a red Status dialog box, then refer to the ControlFLASH User Manual, publication <u>1756-UM105</u> for troubleshooting information. |  |

| Update   | Status    |   |                 |
|----------|-----------|---|-----------------|
| Catalog  | ) Number: | iTRAK_5730  | ОК              |
| Serial N | Jumber:   | 00000000  |                 |
| Current  | Revision: | 12.002  | Help            |
| New Re   | evision:  | 12.002  |                 |
| Status:  | firmware  | complete. Please verify this new update before using the target its intended application. | <u>View Log</u> |

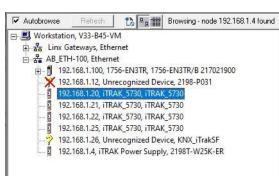
#### 17. Click OK.

**IMPORTANT** You must clear the Inhibit Module checkbox on the Connection page in the iTRAK 5730 Module Properties dialog box before resuming normal operation.

**Verify the Firmware Update** Follow these steps to verify that your firmware update was successful.

Verifying the firmware update is optional.

- 1. Open your RSLinx software.
- 2. From the Communications menu, choose RSWho.



- 3. Expand your Ethernet node, Logix backplane, and EtherNet/IP network module.
- 4. Right-click the iTRAK 5730 module and choose Device Properties.

| AB_ETH-100\192.10 | 58.1.20                     | ?         | × |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|-----------|---|
|                   |                             |           |   |
| Device Name:      | iTRAK_5730                  |           | _ |
| Vendor:           | Rockwell Automation - Aller | n-Bradley | _ |
| Product Type:     | 169                         |           | _ |
| Product Code:     | 1                           |           | _ |
| Revision:         | 12.002                      |           | _ |
| Serial Number:    |                             |           | _ |
| EDS File Name     | : 000100A900010CXX.EI       | DS        | _ |
| Faults:           |                             |           |   |
|                   |                             |           |   |
|                   | <u>Close</u> <u>H</u> elp   |           |   |

- 5. Verify the new firmware revision level.
- 6. Click Close.

# **High-speed Data Logging Service**

This appendix provides instructions for how to use the high-speed data logging service of the iTRAK<sup>®</sup> 5730 system.

| Торіс                                     | Page |
|---|------|
| Configure and Use the Message Instruction | 215  |
| iTRAK System Data Logging Parameters      | 223  |

The high-speed data logging service, when used with the iTRAK 5730 system, allows you to log up to 40,000 data points for one to four channels. The sample period of the data logging service can be as low as the Servo Update Rate of the iTRAK module (250  $\mu$ S). This service can be accessed through message instructions.

For more information regarding the use of the data logging service, sample code, and Add-On instructions, see Knowledgebase Answer ID <u>QA34226</u>.

Follow these steps to configure and use the high-speed data logging service with a message instruction.

- 1. In your Studio 5000 Logix Designer® project, open the routine where you want to implement data logging.
- 2. Create a Message instruction.
- 3. Right click the Message instruction and select New Tag...

The New Parameter or Tag dialog box appears.

| New Parameter or Tag X     |               |        |            |  |
|----------------------------|---------------|--------|------------|--|
| Name:                      | MSG_1         |        | Create 🗸 🔻 |  |
| Description:               |               | ^      | Cancel     |  |
|                            |               |        | Help       |  |
|                            |               | ~      |            |  |
| Usage:                     | Local Tag     | ~      |            |  |
| Type:                      | Base V Connec | ction  |            |  |
| Alias For:                 |               | ~      |            |  |
| Data Type:                 | MESSAGE       |        |            |  |
| Parameter<br>Connection:   |               | ~      |            |  |
| Scope:                     | 🔓 MainProgram | ~      |            |  |
| External<br>Access:        | Read/Write    | ~      |            |  |
| Style:                     |               | $\sim$ |            |  |
| Constant                   |               |        |            |  |
| Sequencing                 |               |        |            |  |
| Open MESSAGE Configuration |               |        |            |  |
| Open Parameter Connections |               |        |            |  |

# Configure and Use the Message Instruction

- 4. Type the tag name.
- 5. Click Create.
- 6. Open the Configuration dialog box by clicking the ellipsis (...) next to the tag name.

The Message Configuration dialog box appears.

| Message Configuration - MSG_1   | ×   |
|---|---|
| Configuration Communication Tag   |   |
| Message Type: CIP Generic   | ~   |
| Service<br>Type: Custom ✓<br>Service 3a (Hex) Class: 42 (Hex)<br>Instance: 2 Attribute: 0 (Hex) | Source Element: DataLog_Req_DINT[I \rightarrow Source Length: 40 (Bytes) Destination Element: New Tag |
| Enable  | Done Done Length: 0   |
| O Error Code: Extended Error Code: Error Path: Straight_1 Error Text:                           | 🗌 Timed Out 🗢   |
| ОК  | Cancel Apply Help   |

- 7. On the Configuration tab, set these configuration parameters:
  - Message Type: CIP Generic
  - Service Type: Custom
  - Service Code: 3A<sub>HEX</sub>
  - Instance: Axis Instance that you want log data from
  - Class: 42<sub>HEX</sub>
  - Attribute: 0
  - Source Element: a tag of data type DINT[10]
  - Source Length: 40 bytes (each DINT consists of 4 bytes)



Axis Instance 1 is the section axis, and axis instances 2...5 are mover axes 1...4.

The DINT[10] array in the message configuration can be set as follows:
 a. Create a User-Defined Data Type (UDT) to enter the data logging configuration.

| Name:        | Data_logging  | g_Request |             |        | Data Type Siz | e: 40 bytes |
|--------------|---------------|-----------|-------------|--------|---------------|-------------|
| Description: |               |           |             |        |               |             |
| Members:     |               |           |             |        |               |             |
| 🖌 Nam        | ne            | Data Type | Description |        |               |             |
| Trige        | gerType       | SINT      |             |        |               |             |
| Trig         | gerMode       | SINT      |             |        |               |             |
| Trig         | gerSource     | INT       |             |        |               |             |
| Trig         | gerBit        | SINT      |             |        |               |             |
| Pres         | toreSamples   | SINT      |             |        |               |             |
| Nun          | nberOfSamples | INT       |             |        |               |             |
| Trig         | gerLevel      | REAL      |             |        |               |             |
| PAD          |               | REAL      |             |        |               |             |
| Sam          | plePeriod     | LINT      |             |        |               |             |
| Data         | Source        | INT[8]    |             |        |               |             |
| * 4          | Add Member    |           |             |        |               |             |
|              |               |           |             |        |               |             |
|              |               |           |             |        |               |             |
|              |               |           |             |        |               |             |
|              |               |           |             |        |               |             |
|              |               |           |             |        |               |             |
|              |               |           |             |        |               |             |
|              |               |           |             |        |               | ~           |
|              |               |           | OK          | Cancel | Apply         | Help        |

### The data structure of a data logging request is shown in this table:

| Parameter         | Туре  | Description   | Value  |
|-------------------|-------|---|--|
| Trigger type      | USINT | Specifies the type of trigger operation that is performed on the designated attribute. When Signal is selected, the data logger triggers based on the value of the specified attribute relative to the Trigger Level. Attribute can be of integer or floating-point data type. When Boolean is selected, the data logger triggers based on a Boolean state of the attribute or attribute bit. | Enumeration:<br>0 = Signal<br>1 = Boolean<br>2255 = reserved   |
| Trigger Mode      | USINT | Enumerated mode of operation for the triggering algorithm:<br>• A positive (+) Edge Trigger looks for an attribute value transition relative to the Trigger Level.<br>• A Level Trigger simply monitors the current attribute value relative to the Trigger Level.  | Enumeration:<br>0 = Immediate<br>1 = "+" Edge Trigger<br>2 = "-" Edge Trigger<br>3 = ">=" Level Trigger<br>4 = "<=" Level Trigger<br>5255 = reserved |
| Trigger Source    | UINT  | ID of the attribute whose value is used to trigger data logging.  | -  |
| Trigger Bit       | USINT | The attribute bit number whose value is evaluated to trigger data logging. This parameter is only applicable to Boolean trigger types. A value of 0 applies to the least significant bit of the attribute.  | -  |
| Pre-store Samples | USINT | The percentage of the data log buffer dedicated to pre-store samples before the trigger event. The remaining buffer is filled with samples after the trigger event. The pre-store range that is allowed is from 0 100%. Trigger events are detected until the data buffer is sufficiently full.   | _  |
| Capture Size      | UINT  | Specifies the number of samples to store in the data log arrays. Capture Size applies to each Data Log array. Capture Size is limited to the size of the data log array. This value is applied to the attribute, Data Capture Size.   | _  |
| Trigger Level     | LREAL | The value of the trigger source that causes a trigger event. The units for this value are determined by the selected Trigger source. If a Boolean trigger type is selected, the Trigger Level is set to either 0 or 1.  | Attribute-dependent units  |
| Sample Period     | LINT  | Time period between samples stored in the data buffer. This value shall be an integer multiple of the minimum sample period of the device. For example, if the device can acquire data at 250 µS, the choices shall be 250 µS, 500 µS, 750 µS, and so on.   | Nanoseconds  |
| Data Source 1     | UINT  | ID of attribute to store in associated data log.  | -  |
| Data Source 2     | UINT  | ID of attribute to store in associated data log.  | -  |
| Data Source 3     | UINT  | ID of attribute to store in associated data log.  | -  |
| Data Source 4     | UINT  | ID of attribute to store in associated data log.  | -  |

| Parameter     | Туре | Description                                      | Value                          |
|---------------|------|--|--------------------------------|
| Data Source 5 | UINT | ID of attribute to store in associated data log. |                                |
| Data Source 6 | UINT | ID of attribute to store in associated data log. | Not supported. iTRAK currently |
| Data Source 7 | UINT | ID of attribute to store in associated data log. | supports 4 channels.           |
| Data Source 8 | UINT | ID of attribute to store in associated data log. |                                |

b. Copy this UDT to the DINT[10] with a COP instruction before using it in the Message instruction.

c. Convert the Trigger Level from Real to LREAL and copy the value into the DINT[10] array.

The trigger level is an LREAL in the iTRAK module. However, LREAL is not a data type supported in the Studio 5000 Logix Designer application. Thus, you must convert the trigger level that is entered in the UDT as a REAL data type to a DINT data type in a format equivalent to an LREAL data type. This conversion must be performed before arming the data logging function using a COP instruction and three BTD instructions:

| Convert_TriggerLevel_to_DINT |                          |            | COP<br>Source ReqBuffer1.TriggerLevel<br>Dest TriggerLevel_DINT<br>Length 1 |
|------------------------------|--------------------------|------------|---|
| Convert_TriggerLevel_to_DINT | BTD                      | BTD        | BTD   |
|                              | Source TriggerLevel_DINT |            | Source TriggerLevel_DINT  |
|                              | 0<br>Source Bit 27       |            | 0 <b>+</b>  |
|                              |                          |            | Source Bit 0  |
|                              | Dest DataLog_Req_DINT[3] |            | Dest DataLog_Req_DINT[2]  |
|                              | 0                        | ♠ 0 ♠      | 0 🖛   |
|                              | Dest Bit 27              | Dest Bit 0 | Dest Bit 29   |
|                              | Length 5                 | Length 27  | Length 3  |

9. On the Communication tab, set the path to the module you want to log data from using the Message Path Browser.

| onfiguration    | Communicat   | ion Tag     |         |              |         |            |         |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|---------|--------------|---------|------------|---------|
| Path:           | Straight_1   |             |         |              |         | Browse     |         |
|                 | Straight_1   |             |         |              |         |            |         |
| O Broado        | cast:        | $\sim$      |         |              |         |            |         |
| Communic        | ation Method |             |         |              |         |            |         |
| CIP             | ODH+ Cł      | annel:      | 'A'     | Destination  | n Link: | 0 🗘        |         |
| CIP W           |              | ource Link: | 0       | Destination  | n Node: | 0 ‡        | (Octal) |
| Conne           | ected        |             | Cache C | onnections ┥ | •       | Large Conr | nection |
| Conne           | ected        |             | Cache C | onnections • | •       | Large Conr | nection |
| Conne<br>Enable | ⊙ Enable Wa  | iting       | Cache C | Onnections • | Done La | Large Conr | nection |

10. Click OK.

Data Logging Status (Attribute ID = 940) identifies the status of the data collection process. This attribute can be set to one of the following values:

- 0 = Inactive
- 1 = Buffering
- 2 = Buffered and Armed
- 3 = Triggered and Collecting
- 4 = Collected
- 11. Use these configuration parameters in the message instruction to read Data Logging Status from the iTRAK module:
  - Message Type: CIP Generic
  - Service Type: Get Attribute Single
  - Service Code: E<sub>HEX</sub>
  - Instance: Axis Instance that you want log data from
  - Class: 42<sub>HEX</sub>
  - Attribute: 3AC<sub>HEX</sub>
  - Destination Element: a tag of data type DINT

| onfigurati                                       | on Com | nunication Ta                              | ig  |  |                               |         |
|--|--------|--|---|--|-------------------------------|---------|
| Message  | Type:  | CIP Gene                                   | ric   | ~  |                               |         |
| Service<br>Type:<br>Service<br>Code:<br>Instance | e      | ibute Single<br>(Hex) Class:<br>Attribute: | <ul> <li>42 (Hex)</li> <li>3ac (Hex)</li> </ul> | Source Element:<br>Source Length:<br>Destination<br>Element: | 0 ¢<br>Data_Log_Sta           | (Bytes) |
|  |        |  |   |  |                               |         |
| ) Enable   | OEna   | ble Waiting                                | ⊖ Start   | ⊖ Done   | Done Length: 0                |         |
|  |        | ble Waiting                                | ⊖ Start   | ◯ Done   | Done Length: 0                |         |
| ) Enable<br>) Error Co<br>ror Path:<br>ror Text: |        | Extend                                     | ⊖ Start<br>ed Error Code:                       | O Done   | Done Length: 0<br>Timed Out 🕈 |         |

Data Trigger Time Stamp (Attribute ID = 941) identifies the time stamp that is associated with the data logging trigger event in nanoseconds.

- 12. Use these configuration parameters in the message instruction to read Data Trigger Time Stamp from the iTRAK module:
  - Message Type: CIP Generic
  - Service Type: Get Attribute Single
  - Service Code: E<sub>HEX</sub>
  - Instance: Axis Instance that you want log data from
  - Class: 42<sub>HEX</sub>
  - Attribute: 3ADH<sub>HEX</sub>
  - Destination Element: a tag of data type LINT

| Configurati                                      | on Comm |  |    |   |                   |                                      |                           |
|--|---------|--|----|---|-------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| Message  | Type:   | CIP Gene   | ic |   | ~                 |                                      |                           |
| Service<br>Type:<br>Service<br>Code:<br>Instance | e (     | ute Single<br>Hex) <u>C</u> lass:<br>Attri <u>b</u> ute: |    | Source E<br>Source L<br>Hex)<br>Destinati<br>Element: | ength: 0<br>on Da | ÷<br>ata_Trigger<br>Ne <u>w</u> Tag… | ∨<br>(Bytes)<br>_Time_£ ↓ |
|  |         |  |    |   |                   |                                      |                           |

Data Trigger Index (Attribute ID = 942) identifies the index of the data point associated with the data logging trigger event. The trigger index is from 0...39999. For example, if the Pre-store Sample is 10% and the Capture Size is 32000, the Trigger Index would be 3199.

- 13. Use these configuration parameters in the message instruction to read Data Trigger Index from the iTRAK module:
  - Message Type: CIP Generic
  - Service Type: Get Attribute Single
  - Service Code: E<sub>HEX</sub>
  - Instance: Axis Instance that you want log data from
  - Class: 42<sub>HEX</sub>
  - Attribute: 3AE<sub>HEX</sub>
  - Destination Element: a tag of data type DINT

| Message Co  | nfiguration - MSG_2   |                              |  | ×                               |
|---|---|------------------------------|--|---------------------------------|
| Configuration<br>Message <u>I</u><br>Service<br>Type: | n* Communication Tag<br>Type: CIP Generic<br>Get Attribute Single<br>e (Hex) <u>Class</u> : |                              | Source Element:<br>Source Length:<br>Destination<br>Element: | v<br>0                          |
| C Enable Error Code Error Path: S Error Text:         |   | ⊖ Start<br>Error Code:<br>OK | ODone C<br>Cancel  | Oone Length: 0<br>] Timed Out ← |

The sampled real-time data are stored in general-purpose array attributes. The iTRAK 5730 system currently supports only four data channels and the log data from each channel is stored in these attributes:

- Data Log 1 (Attribute ID = 943)
- Data Log 2 (Attribute ID = 944)
- Data Log 3 (Attribute ID = 945)
- Data Log 4 (Attribute ID = 946)

- 14. Use these configuration parameters in the message instruction to read Log Data from the iTRAK module:
  - Message Type: CIP Generic
  - Service Type: Get Attribute Single
  - Service Code: E<sub>HEX</sub>
  - Instance: Axis Instance that you want log data from
  - Class: 42<sub>HEX</sub>
  - Attribute: Attribute ID of the data log channel you want log data from in Hex.
    - Data Log 1 = 3AFHEX
    - Data Log 2 = 3BoHEX
    - Data Log 3 = 3B1HEX
    - Data Log 4 = 3B2HEX
  - Destination Element: a tag of data type REAL[40000]

| Message Co                                    | onfiguration - MSG_2  |                       |                                   |                             | ×            |
|---|---|-----------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|
| Configuratio                                  | on Communication Tag  |                       |                                   |                             |              |
| Message                                       | Type: CIP Generic   | ;                     | ~                                 | ]                           |              |
| Service<br>Type:                              | Get Attribute Single  | ~                     | Source Element:<br>Source Length: | 0                           | ∨<br>(Bytes) |
| Ser <u>v</u> ice<br>Code:<br><b>Instance:</b> | e (Hex) <u>C</u> lass:<br>2 Attri <u>b</u> ute:   | 42 (Hex)<br>3af (Hex) | Destination<br>Element:           | Data_Log<br>Ne <u>w</u> Tag | ~            |
|   |   |                       |                                   |                             |              |
|   |   |                       |                                   |                             |              |
|   |   |                       |                                   |                             |              |
| <u>^</u>                                      | 0.5.11.11.1   | 0.0.1                 | ~~                                |                             |              |
| O Enable                                      | O Enable Waiting  | ⊖ Start               | O Done                            | Done Length: 0              |              |
| ) Error Cod<br>Error Path: \$<br>Error Text:  | Second | Error Code:           |                                   | 🗌 Timed Out 🕈               |              |
|   |   |                       |                                   |                             |              |

15. Click OK.

# iTRAK System Data Logging Parameters

The attributes that are listed in the following table can be used as Data Source and Trigger Source parameters.

### Table 49 - Data Logging Parameters

| Attribute ID | Attribute Name                            | Read or<br>Write | Mover Axis | Section Axis |
|--------------|---|------------------|------------|--------------|
| 483          | Acceleration Feedback                     | R                | Y          | N            |
| 452          | Acceleration Feedforward Command          | R                | Y          | N            |
| 460/216      | Acceleration Feedforward Gain             | W                | Y          | N            |
| 367          | Acceleration Fine Command                 | R                | Y          | N            |
| 482          | Acceleration Reference                    | R                | Y          | N            |
| 844          | Adaptive Tuning Gain Scaling Factor       | R                | Y          | N            |
| 522          | Current Limit Source                      | R                | N          | Y            |
| 620/266      | DC Bus Voltage                            | R                | N          | Y            |
| 636          | Inverter Capacity                         | R                | N          | Y            |
| 801          | Load Observer Acceleration Estimate       | R                | Y          | N            |
| 806          | Load Observer Bandwidth                   | W                | Y          | N            |
| 807          | Load Observer Integrator Bandwidth        | W                | Y          | N            |
| 802          | Load Observer Torque Estimate             | R                | Y          | N            |
| 635/259      | Motor Capacity                            | R                | N          | Y            |
| 521          | Operative Current Limit                   | R                | N          | Y            |
| 603          | Output Power                              | R                | Y          | N            |
| 436/131      | Position Error                            | R                | Y          | N            |
| 1402         | Position Feedback1                        | R                | Y          | N            |
| 365          | Position Fine Command                     | R                | Y          | N            |
| 442          | Position Integrator Bandwidth             | W                | Y          | N            |
| 437          | Position Integrator Output                | R                | Y          | N            |
| 443          | Position Lock Tolerance                   | W                | Y          | N            |
| 441          | Position Loop Bandwidth                   | W                | Y          | N            |
| 438          | Position Loop Output                      | R                | Y          | N            |
| 432          | Position Reference                        | R                | Y          | N            |
| 431          | Position Trim                             | W                | Y          | N            |
| 496          | System Inertia                            | W                | Y          | N            |
| 495          | Torque Estimate                           | R                | Y          | N            |
| 504/332      | Torque Limit Negative                     | W                | Y          | N            |
| 505/333      | Torque Limit Positive                     | W                | Y          | N            |
| 502          | Torque Low Pass Filter Bandwidth          | W                | Y          | N            |
| 843          | Torque Low Pass Filter Bandwidth Estimate | R                | Y          | N            |
| 792          | Torque Notch Filter 2 Frequency Estimate  | R                | Y          | N            |
| 793          | Torque Notch Filter 2 Magnitude Estimate  | R                | Y          | N            |
| 794          | Torque Notch Filter 2 Width Estimate      | R                | Y          | N            |
| 795          | Torque Notch Filter 3 Frequency Estimate  | R                | Y          | N            |
| 796          | Torque Notch Filter 3 Magnitude Estimate  | R                | Y          | N            |
| 797          | Torque Notch Filter 3 Width Estimate      | R                | Y          | N            |
| 798          | Torque Notch Filter 4 Frequency Estimate  | R                | Y          | N            |
| 799          | Torque Notch Filter 4 Magnitude Estimate  | R                | Y          | N            |
| 800          | Torque Notch Filter 4 Width Estimate      | R                | Y          | N            |
| 841          | Torque Notch Filter Frequency Estimate    | R                | Ŷ          | N            |

Rockwell Automation Publication 2198T-UM003D-EN-P - December 2022

| Attribute ID | Attribute Name                           | Read or<br>Write | Mover Axis | Section Axis |
|--------------|--|------------------|------------|--------------|
| 842          | Torque Notch Filter Magnitude Estimate   | R                | Y          | N            |
| 791          | Torque Notch Filter Width Estimate       | R                | Y          | N            |
| 492          | Torque Reference                         | R                | Y          | N            |
| 493          | Torque Reference Filtered                | R                | Y          | N            |
| 494          | Torque Reference Limited                 | R                | Y          | N            |
| 491          | Torque Trim                              | W                | Y          | N            |
| 12401251     | Track Section Coil 1-12 Current Feedback | R                | N          | Y            |
| 12601271     | Track Section Coil 1-12 Capacity         | R                | N          | Y            |
| 455/135      | Velocity Error                           | R                | Y          | N            |
| 454/134      | Velocity Feedback                        | R                | Y          | N            |
| 433          | Velocity Feedforward Command             | R                | Y          | N            |
| 440/215      | Velocity Feedforward Gain                | W                | Y          | N            |
| 366          | Velocity Fine Command                    | R                | Y          | N            |
| 462          | Velocity Integrator Bandwidth            | W                | Y          | N            |
| 456          | Velocity Integrator Output               | R                | Y          | N            |
| 458          | Velocity Limit Source                    | R                | Y          | N            |
| 461          | Velocity Loop Bandwidth                  | W                | Y          | N            |
| 457          | Velocity Loop Output                     | R                | Y          | N            |
| 469          | Velocity Low Pass Filter Bandwidth       | W                | Y          | N            |
| 453          | Velocity Reference                       | R                | Y          | N            |
| 451          | Velocity Trim                            | W                | Y          | N            |

### Table 49 - Data Logging Parameters (Continued)

# **History of Changes**

This appendix contains the new or updated information for each revision of this publication. These lists include substantive updates only and are not intended to reflect all changes. Translated versions are not always available for each revision.

# 2198T-UM003C-EN-P

#### 2198T-UM003C-EN-P, September 2022

| Change  |  |
|---|--|
| Changed hardware torque value for flat rail installation.                       |  |
| Changed hardware torque value for top and bottom flat curved rail installation. |  |
| Changed hardware torque value for top and bottom flat wedge installation.       |  |

# 2198T-UM003B-EN-P

#### 2198T-UM003B-EN-P, September 2022

| hange  |        |
|--|--------|
| ided the system features table.  |        |
| nanged the description of mounting orientations.   |        |
| lded the Remove Power from the iTRAK® 5730 System section.                                 |        |
| nanged the Protection Against Contact with Hot Parts section.                              |        |
| nanged hardware torque value for bottom flat rail and flat wedge installation.             |        |
| nanged hardware torque value for rectangular wedge installation.                           |        |
| lded to the mounting section.  |        |
| nanged lubrication information.  |        |
| nanged the Number of Motor Module Sections Supported by a Kinetix® 5700 iTRAK Power Supply | table. |
| nanged the Wire an iTRAK 5730 System with an iTRAK Power Supply diagram.                   |        |
| ided content about motor module numbers.   |        |
| nanged the explanation of mover axis assignment.   |        |
| nanged the Apply Power to the iTRAK 5730 System section.                                   |        |
| lded section on mover numbers in fault codes.  |        |

Changed hardware torque value for installing position magnet onto the mover.

# Notes:

### **Numerics**

2198T-AL-SYS-4 166 installation 63 2198T-BE-ED18 replace 155, 159 2198T-BE-ST03 replace 154, 157 2198T-BE-ST06 replace 154, 157 2198T-BE-ST09 replace 154, 157 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2 components 20 replace 146 2198T-L20-T0309-D18-S2 components 20 replace 151 2198T-N1-0304 install 139 remove 139 2198T-NN-0304 install 139 remove 139 2198T-VT0304-E 27, 139 install 141 replace 141

### A

abnormal noise 129 accessory components 14 actions category section axis 108 alarm motor section 130 mover 130 application requirements 174 apply power 113 assembly tag names input 197 output 198 assembly torque diagram 40 assign axes motion group 106 assignment sequence mover 99 associated axes iTRAK 5730 power supply properties 92 Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply properties 88 motor module properties 103 axis tag names motion connection 194 axis tags motion connection 193 axis unstable 129

### B

behavior motor module 132 mover 132 bus-sharing configuration 87, 91 group 87 groups configure 114 regulator 87, 91 bus-sharing group example 114 С category 3 requirements 174 stop category definitions 175 certification application requirements 174 customer responsibilities 174 PL and SIL 175 TÜV Rheinland 173 website 173 clean components 137 rail system 137 communication path configure 208 compatibility controller 28 component description curved motor module 20 mounting ring 24 mover 27 power and control input connector module 22 power and control pass-through connector module 23 power input with control pass-through connector module 23 straight motor module 20 components 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2 20 2198T-L20-T0309-D18-S2 20 iTRAK 5730 system 12 configure advanced connection reaction time limit motor module 98 associated axes iTRAK 5730 power supply 92 Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply 88 motor module 103 bus-sharing groups 114 communication path 208

controller 84

Data Logger 215

date and time controller 85 digital inputs iTRAK 5730 power supply 92 iTRAK 5730 power supply properties 92

Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply 88 Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply properties 88 IP address 82 iTRAK 5730 power supply 90 Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply properties 87 message instruction 215 motion group 105 motor module 93 mover axis 109 network parameters 82 new axis iTRAK 5730 power supply 93 Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply 89 motor module 103 mover 104 power iTRAK power supply 91 Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply 87 motor module 96 safety motor module 97 section axis 107 section axis actions 108 section axis parameters 108 time synchronization controller 86 track motor module 99 ControlFLASH firmware upgrade 208 troubleshooting 213 **ControlFLASH Plus** firmware upgrade 203 controller and drive behavior 130 compatibility 28 configure 84 properties date/time tab 85 enable time synchronization 86 curved motor module component description 20 kit contents 41 curved rail kit contents 42 customer responsibilities 174

### D

Data Logger configure 215 parameters 223 date/time tab controller properties 85 DC power status indicator 128

#### description

EtherNet/IP communication cable 15 infield cover 16 Logix 5000 controller platform 15 lubrication system 16 motor module 15 mounting ring 15 mover 15 mover loader tool 16 mover magnet 15 position magnet 15 power and control input connector module 15 power and control pass-through connector module 15 power cable 15 power circuitry 15 power input with control pass-through connector module 15 rail alignment tool 16 rail system 15 Studio 5000 environment 15 diagram assembly torque 40 fastener size 40 fastener type 40 sequence number 40 tool size 40 tool type 40 digital inputs iTRAK 5730 power supply properties 92 Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply properties 88 dimensions iTRAK 5730 system 43 download Logix program 113

## E

electromechanical components 14 EtherNet/IP communication cable description 15 exception action Studio 5000 Logix Designer 131 explicit messages 192

### F

fastener size diagram 40 fastener type diagram 40 fault code overview 124 code summary 124 firmware upgrade 201 firmware upgrade ControlFLASH 208 ControlFLASH Plus 203 system requirements 201 force continuous 11 peak 11

### G

GuardLogix controllers 182

### I

IEC 60204-1 185 IEC 61508 182 IEC 61800-5-2 182 IEC 62061 182 ignore 131 motor section 130 mover 130 infield cover description 16 initial lubrication using customer provided oil bleed system 172 using iTRAK Lubrication System 167 input assembly tag names 197 input assembly tags 196 inspection kit contents 42 install 2198T-N1-0304 139 2198T-NN-0304 139 2198T-VT0304-xB 141 curved motor module 151 lubricant tubes 66 lubrication system 63 mover 140 position magnet 139 straight motor module 146 track 39 installation lubricant pump 64 planning 39 integrated safety iTRAK 5730 system 173 motor module replacement 198 out-of-box state 176 protocol 187 STO state reset 179 IP address 82 IP rating 11 ISO 13849-1 182 ISO 13849-1 CAT 3 requirements 174 stop category definitions 175 iTRAK 5730 components 14 iTRAK 5730 power supply configure 90 properties 90 iTRAK 5730 power supply properties associated axes category 92 digital input category 92 new axis 93 iTRAK 5730 system components 12 dimensions 43 integrated safety 173 modules 12 **iTRAK power supply** multiple 73 **iTRAK power supply properties** 91

### K

Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply properties 87 Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply properties

#### 87

associated axes category 88 digital input category 88 new axis 89

### kit contents

curved motor module 41 curved rail 42 inspection 42 lubrication system 42 mover 42 position magnet 42 power and control input connector module 42 power and control pass-through connector module 42 power input with control pass-through connector module 42 straight motor module 41 straight rail (300 mm) 41 straight rail (600 mm) 41 straight rail (900 mm) 41 structural mounting ring 42

L

lift mounting ring 44 link network status indicator 128 link speed status indicator 128 load observer 120 Logix 5000 controller platform description 15 Logix Designer 81, 84 exception action 131 Logix program download 113 lubricant pump 63 components 64 installation 64 installation tools 64 mounting dimensions 65 replace cartridge 166 reservoir sealing washer 63 wire 67 lubrication 166 frequency of dispensations 170 initial lubrication 166 normal operation lubrication 166 recommended lubricant 166 using customer oil bleed system 172 using iTRAK Lubrication System 166 volume per dispensation 170

#### lubrication system

contents of an iTRAK Lubrication System 63 description 16 install 63 iTRAK fittings for lubricant tubes 63 iTRAK lubrication system catalog number 166 kit contents 42 lubricant pump 63 lubricant tubes 63, 66 pump fittings 63 pump reservoir sealing washer 63 quantity of iTRAK lubrication systems 63 right angle fittings 63 straight fittings 63 straight nipple fittings 63

### Μ

magnet plate how to handle 38 magnetic field strength 36, 38 maintenance preventative 137 major fault motor section 130 mover 130 mechanical components 14 message instruction configure 215 minor fault motor section 130 mover 130 modules iTRAK 5730 system 12 motion and safety connection 193 connection 193 connection axis tags 193 connection tag names 194 group configuration 105 motion direct commands STO bypass 187 warning messages 188 motion group assign axes 106 motor module accel/decel problems 129 behavior 132 change definition 95 configure 93 define 95 description 15 fault code 125 install curved 151 straight 146 number 125 overheating 129 replacement integrated safety 198 status indicator 127 tune 120 velocity 129 motor module properties 96, 97, 99 associated axes category 103 new axis 103

#### mounting

orientations 13 the iTRAK 5730 assembly 58 mounting ring component description 24 description 15 hole access 58 lift 44 mover add new mover axis 104 behavior 132 description 15, 27 fault code 125 installation 140 kit contents 42 loader tool 16 magnet 15 magnetic field strength 36 number 125 number assignment 99 pitch 11 replace 140 speed 11 mover axis properties 109

### Ν

network parameters 82 status indicator 126 network and module status indicator 127 new axis iTRAK 5730 power supply properties 93 Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply properties 89 motor module properties 103 mover properties 104 noise abnormal 129 normal operation lubrication using customer provided oil bleed system 172 using iTRAK Lubrication System 170

### Ω

out-of-box state 176 output assembly tag names 198 output assembly tags 196 overtravel fault code 124

### Ρ

parameters Data Logger 223 section axis 108 pavload maximum 11 Performance Level (PL) 175 PFH definition 175

position magnet description 15 install 139 kit contents 42 magnetic field strength 37 remove 139 power and control input connector module component description 22 description 15 kit contents 42 power and control pass-through connector module component description 23 description 15 kit contents 42 power cable description 15 power category 87, 91, 96 bus configuration 87, 91 regulator 87, 91 bus-sharing group 87 iTRAK power supply properties 91 Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply properties 87 motor module properties 96 primary bus-sharing group 91 secondary bus-sharing group 91 power circuitry description 15 power input with control pass-through connector module component description 23 description 15 kit contents 42 power supply firmware 28 power up 113 primary bus-sharing group 91 properties iTRAK 5730 power supply 90 Kinetix 5700 DC-bus power supply 87 mover axis 109 section axis 107 R rail alignment tool description 16 rail system clean 137 description 15

replace 2198T-BE-ED18 155, 159

2198T-BE-ST03 154, 157 2198T-BE-ST06 154, 157 2198T-BE-ST09 154, 157 2198T-L20-T0303-A00-S2 146 2198T-L20-T0309-D18-S2 151 2198T-VT0304-E 141 curved motor module 151 mover 140 position magnet 139 **RSLinx** communication path 208

## S

safe torque-off 178 **PFH 175** specifications 180 safety handling 61 machine guarding 33 risk assessment 32 supervisor state 192 safety category 97 motor module properties 97 safety connection 196 input assembly tags 196 output assembly tags 196 Safety Integration Level (SIL) 175 secondary bus-sharing group 91 section axis actions category 108 parameters 108 properties 107 sequence number diagram 40 software overtravel 124 Studio 5000 Logix Designer application 84 specifications safe torque-off 180 speed maximum 11 payload limitations 11 standard actions 132 status indicator DC power status 128 link network status 128 link speed status 128 motor module 127 network and module status 127 network status 126 STO bypass 187 state reset 179 stop category 0 185 stopping actions configure 132 straight motor module component description 20 kit contents 41

remove

2198T-N1-0304 139

2198T-NN-0304 139

position magnet 139

remove power 35

straight rail (300 mm) kit contents 41 straight rail (600 mm) kit contents 41 straight rail (900 mm) kit contents 41 structural mounting ring kit contents 42 **Studio 5000 environment** description 15 Studio 5000 Logix Designer 81 application 84 exception action 131 system features 11 system power apply 113 remove 35 Т

time synchronization controller properties 86 timed SS1 request removed 186 timing diagram request removed 186 timed SS1 185 tool size diagram 40 tool type diagram 40 track install 39 track configuration category 99 motor module properties 99 troubleshooting alarm 130 ControlFLASH 213 controller/drive fault behavior 130 DC power status indicator 128 fauİt code overview 124 code summary 124 general system problems 129 axis unstable 129 motor module accel/decel 129 motor module overheating 129 motor module velocity 129 no movement 129 ignore 130, 131 link network status indicator 128 link speed status indicator 128 major fault 130 minor fault 130 module status indicator 127 motor module behavior 132 mover behavior 132 network and module status indicator 127 network status indicator 126 standard actions 132 stopping actions 132 definitions 132 tune

### U

upgrade

# firmware 201

### W

website certifications 173 wire

iTRAK power supply single 72 lubricant pump 67 multiple iTRAK power supplies 73

motor module 120

# **Additional Resources**

These documents contain additional information concerning related products from Rockwell Automation. You can view or download publications at <u>rok.auto/literature</u>.

### **iTRAK 5730 and Kinetix System Resources**

These resources provide information about the iTRAK® 5730 system and related Kinetix® products.

| Resource  | Description  |
|---|--|
| iTRAK 5730 System Technical Data, publication <u>2198T-TD002</u>  | Product specifications for Rockwell Automation® iTRAK 5730 system components, with performance, environmental, certifications, load force, and dimension drawings. |
| Kinetix 5700, 5500, 5300, and 5100 Servo Drives Specifications Technical Data, publication <u>KNX-TD003</u>                         | Provides product specifications for Kinetix Integrated Motion over the EtherNet/IP network and EtherNet/IP networking servo drive families.                        |
| Kinetix 5700 iTRAK Power Supply and iTRAK Bus Conditioner<br>Module Supply Installation Instruction, publication <u>2198T-IN001</u> | Provides information for wiring and connecting the Kinetix 5700 iTRAK power supply to the iTRAK system.  |
| 3D CAD Models of iTRAK Components available at<br>https://motionanalyzer.rockwellautomation.com/Products/iTrak                      | Provides 2D outline, assembly, and system drawings, STEP files for the movers and motor modules, and hyper links to complete system STEP files.                    |
| Independent Cart Technology Libraries, available on the Product Compatibility and Download Center website, <u>rok.auto/pcdc</u>     | Provides standardized object-oriented libraries for iTRAK systems.   |
| System Design for Control of Electrical Noise Reference Manual,<br>publication <u>GMC-RM001</u>                                     | Information, examples, and techniques that are designed to minimize system electrical noise failures.  |
| Industrial Automation Wiring and Grounding Guidelines, publication 1770-4.1   | Provides general guidelines for installing a Rockwell Automation industrial system.  |
| Product Certifications website, rok.auto/certifications   | Provides declarations of conformity, certificates, and other certification details.  |

### **Programmable Controllers Resources**

These resourced provide information about programmable controllers.

| Resource  | Description   |
|---|---|
| ControlLogix <sup>®</sup> 5580 and GuardLogix <sup>®</sup> 5580 Controllers User Manual, publication<br><u>1756-UM543</u> | Provides information about designing a system, operating a ControlLogix or GuardLogix-based controllers system, and developing applications.        |
| GuardLogix 5580 and Compact GuardLogix 5380 Controller Systems Safety Reference Manual, publication <u>1756-RM012</u>     | Describes the GuardLogix 5580 and Compact GuardLogix 5380 controller systems, which are type-approved and certified for use in safety applications. |
| CompactLogix™ 5480 Controllers User Manual, publication <u>5069-UM002</u>   | Provides information on how to use CompactLogix 5480 controllers.   |
| Compact GuardLogix 5380 Controllers User Manual, publication 5069-UM001   | Provides information on how to install, configure, program, and use CompactLogix and Compact GuardLogix controllers.                                |
| Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP Network Reference Manual, publication <u>MOTION-RM003</u>                            | Provides information on the AXIS_CIP_DRIVE attributes and the Studio 5000 Logix Designer® application Control Modes and Methods.                    |
| Logix 5000 <sup>™</sup> Controllers Motion Instructions Reference Manual,<br>publication <u>MOTION-RM002</u>              | Provides a programmer with details about motion instructions for use with Logix 5000 controllers.   |

## **EtherNet/IP Resources**

These resourced provide information about EtherNet/IP systems.

| Resource  | Description   |
|---|---|
| EtherNet/IP Network Devices User Manual, publication ENET-UM006   | Describes how to configure and use EtherNet/IP devices to communicate on the EtherNet/IP network.                       |
| EtherNet/IP Device Level Ring Application Technique, publication ENET-AT007   | Describes Device Level Ring (DLR) topologies, configuration considerations, and diagnostic methods.                     |
| Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP Network Configuration and Startup User Manual, publication <u>MOTION-UM003</u> | Provides information on configuring and troubleshooting your ControlLogix and CompactLogix EtherNet/IP network modules. |

# **Rockwell Automation Support**

Use these resources to access support information.

| Technical Support Center                            | Find help with how-to videos, FAQs, chat, user forums, Knowledgebase, and product notification updates. | <u>rok.auto/support</u> |
|---|---|-------------------------|
| Local Technical Support Phone Numbers               | Locate the telephone number for your country.   | rok.auto/phonesupport   |
| Technical Documentation Center                      | Quickly access and download technical specifications, installation instructions, and user manuals.      | rok.auto/techdocs       |
| Literature Library                                  | Find installation instructions, manuals, brochures, and technical data publications.                    | rok.auto/literature     |
| Product Compatibility and Download Center<br>(PCDC) | Download firmware, associated files (such as AOP, EDS, and DTM), and access product release notes.      | <u>rok.auto/pcdc</u>    |

# **Documentation Feedback**

Your comments help us serve your documentation needs better. If you have any suggestions on how to improve our content, complete the form at <u>rok.auto/docfeedback</u>.

# Waste Electrical and Electronic Equipment (WEEE)



At the end of life, this equipment should be collected separately from any unsorted municipal waste.

Rockwell Automation maintains current product environmental compliance information on its website at rok.auto/pec.

Allen-Bradley, CompactLogix, ControlFLASH, ControlFLASH Plus, ControlLogix, expanding human possibility, FactoryTalk, GuardLogix, iTRAK, Kinetix, Logix 5000, Rockwell Automation, RSLinx, Stratix, Studio 5000, and Studio 5000 Logix Designer are trademarks of Rockwell Automation, Inc.

CIP, CIP Safety, CIP Sync, and EtherNet/IP are trademarks of ODVA, Inc.

Trademarks not belonging to Rockwell Automation are property of their respective companies.

Rockwell Otomasyon Ticaret A.Ş. Kar Plaza İş Merkezi E Blok Kat:6 34752, İçerenköy, İstanbul, Tel: +90 (216) 5698400 EEE Yönetmeliğine Uygundur

Connect with us. 👍 🙆 in 😏

#### rockwellautomation.com

expanding human possibility®

AMERICAS: Rockwell Automation, 1201 South Second Street, Milwaukee, WI 53204-2496 USA, Tel: (1) 414.382.2000, Fax: (1) 414.382.4444 EUROPE/MIDDLE EAST/AFRICA: Rockwell Automation NV, Pegasus Park, De Kleetlaan 12a, 1831 Diegem, Belgium, Tel: (32) 2 663 0600, Fax: (32) 2 663 0640 ASIA PACIFIC: Rockwell Automation, Level 14, Core F, Cyberport 3, 100 Cyberport Road, Hong Kong, Tel: (852) 2887 4788, Fax: (852) 2508 1846 UNITED KINGDOM: Rockwell Automation Ltd. Pitfield, Kiln Farm Milton Keynes, MK11 3DR, United Kingdom, Tel: (44)(1908) 838-800, Fax: (44)(1908) 261-917

Publication 2198T-UM003D-EN-P - December 2022 Supersedes Publication 2198T-UM003C-EN-P - September 2022